

James Langley
12 1850

THE
HONOUR
OF
CHIVALRY.

Or the famous and delectable History of
DON BELLIANIS of GREECE,

CONTAINING,

The Valiant Exploits of that magnanimous and
Heroick Prince; Son unto the Emperour
Don Bellaneu of Greece.

Wherein are described, the strange and dangerous ad-
ventures that befell him: with his love toward the Princess
Florisbella, daughter to the Soldan of Babylon.

Translated out of Italian.

*Sed tamen est tristissima janua nostra,
Et labor est unus tempora prima pati.*



LONDON, Printed by E. A. and T. F. for F. Coles,
W. Gilbertson, and C. Tyus, 1663.

HONOR

CHIVALRY

Of gallantry and noble history of

THE TEMPLARS OF CLARE

CONTAINING

A full and complete history of the order of the
Templars, from its origin to the present time.

With a full and complete history of the order of the
Knights of St. John, and the Knights of St. Lazarus.

By J. H. P. J. J. J.

LONDON: Printed by J. H. P. J. J. J.

LONDON: Printed by J. H. P. J. J. J.



x863 F 39

OF THE **The Translators Epistle to the**
gentle Reader.

EVEN as a young child newly (as I may say) crept from his cradle, endeavouring to pronounce with perfection his naturall language for his future use, is first instructed to spell, before he be put to reading, and to read ere he expound: so I, whose rough skill and harsh unfild wit, wanting the practise of continuing time, being disfurnisht, of natures help and arts polisht disciplines, must seem to go, before I may presume to flye, trusting to my own unfledged wings, least with rash aspiring Icarus, I overhelme my helps in the recordlesse cave of everlasting disgrace. I speak *this* (most courteous and gentle readers) for that I had some few moneths past, onely for my private recreation, in idle hours, imitated in this history, the invention of a Forraign wit, whose conceit being commended of divers Gentlemen of no mean desert, have by their importunate intreaties, forced me (altogether unwilling) to make known the rude exercise of my vacant leisure, which at length to satisfie their requests, not my desires, I did resolve to do, only thereby to make you sport, in the tedious passage of the winter nights, if other pastimes do not disturb it. For on this sole hope it only leanes, that being the first sprigg of a young plant set

in

371913

The Epistle to the Reader.

in a barren ground, over-grown with weeds, so it will obtain your generall gentle acceptance, with a favourable pardon for this rash presume. Defending it with the shield of your favours, which will be a sufficient Tower, well armed against all scandalizing tongues, that but make an ecchoing noise, with their airy words, harm none, save themselves, by their reproachful taunts, even on their barking selves. Ent walled with hope, that the gentlenesse of your vertues, will nothing derogate from your names, by kindly accepting my good will, I end; praying, that all present and ensuing happiness and content, may every way answer your own wisher: requesting, that where you dislike, there you would mildly amend and not utterly condemne.

THE

72

John M. ...
164

Handwritten signature

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS

Handwritten signature



A



THE
HONOUR of CHIVALRY.

Set down in the most Famous History of the invincible Prince *Don Bellianis*, son to the Emperour

Don Bellaneo of Greece, wherein are described his adventures and love toward the Princess:

Florisbella Daughter to the Soldon of Babylon.

CHAP. I.

How the Emperour *Don Bellianis* married the Princessse *Clarinda*, daughter unto *Tolejano* King of Spain.

When the Grecian Monarchy flourished with most glory, triumphing over the greatest part of Christendome, as is recorded in the large annuall Registers of Frisone (Surnamed the Wise) preservers of the never dying, and ever memorable acts of the worthies of his time: There then solely swayed the awful imperious Crown and Scepter, an Emperour named *Don Bellaneo*, who through his rare vertues, gentle affability, gallant conditions, royall and herclick deeds, his admirable regard, and most great care in the administration of equal justice to his subjects, not taking the ones right to make the other rich, was of them so highly admired and revered that the superfluity of words in revealing it, would impoverish rather then enrich the perpetuity of his never dying glory: this Emperour was also together in his youth inclined & inflamed with desire of haughty attempts, the conquering of soverain nations Kingdoms, and Signorities, wherein he never rested, continually be taking himself, clasp in habiliments of military arms, in field against his foes manifesting his incredible valor, and his well knit sinew, which nothing disagreed from the greatness of his mind.

The

The familiar instance of his nobles and vassals was such, that they might be rather termed his companions, and fellows, than subjects. He always would hazard his person in greatest and most difficult dangers offered him, accounting that honor to be supreme, which was obtained with most toyl and peril, and judging it better that strangers should blaze abroad the greatness of his military fortune, and magnanimity of war, than the commending of his souldiers deeds, insomuch that their chiefest acts in the perilous battels, was to guard their Lord: for so great was his contagious heart not fearing mighty and puissant Giants, nor the strength of admitted knights, but as pretending all honor to himself, and esteeming it but little, would as it were headlong run, where he found most dangers, that sometimes his whole camp might hardly defend him from the fury of contrarious squadrons, where his heroick thought could not harbor the least sign of pale trembling fear: in which kind of life he more joyed, then if he lived among all the delicious and delighting pleasures, that any Monarches could enjoy in greatest plenty. Whereby his all-wondering fame was so vulgar, throughout the far remoted Nations of the spacious Orbe, which they accounted as a blazing comet, presaging the future ruine, that his bare name caused in them such agues of timorous fear, as both the furious Thunder (renting the darkned welkin, with mighty showers of Earth drowning waters) in the heartlesse multitude of rustick countrey swains, by which he became so odious to all his enemies, that they would often give their own blood as a reward for his death, fore-judging his life to be their utter desolation. But having consumed the greatest part of his youth in hostile armes, by counsel, and importunity of his Nobility and Subjects, being often urged thereto (though against his will) he returned with wreaths of immortall triumph, to the famous and ever glorious City of Constantinople, from whence were dispatched in his behalfe, to demand in marriage the Princessse Clarinda, Daughter to Toioian, King of Hesperia, to whom in Embassy were sent personages sufficient to make known his high magnificence, among whom went as chiefe of the King of Hungaria, (cousin to the Emperour) and the Prince of Macedon, with many Dukes & Lords, with the haughtiest pomp, and royallest shew of
Embassage

Embassage that ever went to any Potentate. This understood by the Iberian King, he in person came to meet them, making at the sudden coming of such States to seek him from so far Countreys: who being seen of them, with great courtesie that abounded in them, alighting, doing him that duty that might appertain to such a King, who perceiving it, with the like solemnity entertained them, where over-passing their greetings, they remounted on horse-back, and by the way briefly discoursed of many things, untill they arrived at the famous City of Hispalis, where they were received again with many very sumptuous shews, prepared only for that purpose, to expresse the greatness of his State: and approaching the royall Pallace of Hispalis, they alighted, the King Toloian leading in one hand the King of Hungary, & Macedon in the other hand, entered the great Hall, where the Queen and the Princess Clarinda with others Wives, expected their arrival, and most majestically received them anew, and the King of Hungaria kneeled to the Queen, desiring to kiss her hand; but she refraining it, took him up in her armes, embracing and honouring him as worthily as the dignity of his estate merited, doing the like unto the Macedonian Prince and other nobles that also prostrated themselves before the Princess, who entertained them with such gallant grace, that they greatly admired at her rare beauty, and singular perfections, thinking themselves happy, to have so absolute a Lady for their Empress. So sooner ended their salutations but the tables being laid, they sat down, and were used according to their magnificence: afterward they had appointed them large and rich lodgings, by his Majesties command retaining in the pallace (the more to honour them) the two Kings. The next morning were summoned the chief Lords to Parliament, and their present audience to the Kingly Embassadors, who being thither sent for to their Senate house, delivered from their Lord and Emperours their Embassage: for which the Spanish King rested highly contented, and replied he was fully determined to accord with the Emperours request, therewith remaining highly satisfied, and so they might prepare themselves, for in ten days he and they should be provided of all necessaries: whereat they greatly rejoiced, so did the Queen and Princess with that marriage, having before heard of the

the Emperours rare and absolute conditions. At length all things ordered, they departed leaving the Court in great solitude, though the Princesses absence, who with her train, continued their daily journeys, till they came to Constantinople, where they were welcomed and the nuptials solemnized with most magnificent triumphs, stoornes, and all manner of pastimes according to the greatness of such estates.

CHAP. II.

The Birth of *Don Bellianis of Greece*, and of a strange adventure did befall him on hunting, by which he parted from the Emperour his father.

NOW the History doth record, that in process of time the Emperour Don Bellaneo had of the Empress Clarinda three sons, the eldest called Don Bellianis of Greece, that inherited the Empire after his fathers death: the second Don Clarineo of Spain: the third, Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, who not only in valour and military discipline, equalled their father, but excelled all other of their time, in all gallant and worthy herocall exercises; insomuch that all men had them in high admiration especially the prince Don Bellianis, that was educated as his royal state merited, and the heir of such an Empire required, untill he came to the age of eight years, in which no Donzell in the Court (though he doubled his years) could excell him (there being very many) chiefly the Prince of Macedons son, by name Don Brianell: another of the King of Hungary, called Don Arfileo the strong, through his excessive strength; for being knighted, he would often between his arms smother puissant knights so that next the Prince he was accounted chiefest. In which time they were instructed and taught those things as fitted such Princes, wherein they so well profitted, but especially the Prince Don Bellianis, who much applied himself to musick, that in these daies none surpassed him: that the Emperour seeing him so much given unto it, was not slack in providing for him the excellentest tutors that might be found: to whom, and those he had the Prince highly rewarded. In which worthy exercise he buied himself till he perfected the age of twelve years, with such forwardness, that every one admires him; assuredly imagining that in the compass of the whole earth was not a more excellent and rare spirit.

At this time he was taught the science of arms; in which he shewed himself so expert, as it were a thing he should the inheritance possess, that he seemed to need no teacher. In this exercise he spent two years. About which time the Emperour being desirous to hunt in a spacious Forrest, three miles distant from the City, and being provided of all necessaries, he departed to it with the Empress, and his son Don Bellianis, leaving his two brethren in Court, that they desired not to go with them, but there accompanied them Don Brianell, and the Prince Arileo, with many Knights and Lords of high esteem with so great and royall train, as they were going to pitch battell. The Prince Don Bellianis, did lead by the reins the Empress his mothers Palfrey, and the Emperour went comforted with the Prince Arileo, and Don Brianell, of whom he rested greatly satisfied.

In this equipage, within a while they arrived at the place where straight their sport began, that with the noise of hands and hooves, they drowned the Echo of their own voyces. A while after, from that side the Empress sat, there issued forth a Lion and a Bear, with so swift a course, that though they would have hid themselves, they could not find any place. The Lion ran straight against the Prince, who although it somewhat scared him, did not therefore fear him, but with an undaunted heart set himself before him, with his sword in hand which at his side he wore. but the Lion joynd with him so suddenly, that he wounded him sorely in the forehead, and griping him between his arms, thrust one of his paws into his flesh, making a deep wound: but the Prince not dismayed thereat, not losing his couragious mind, gave such a thrust from his arms downwards, right to his heart, that the Lion through extreame pain left him. Then looking towards the Empress, saw that the Bear, with diabolish fury, having overthrown the Prince his cousin, against which his great strength nothing prevailed, dragged him over the mountain tops, which he seeing, although grievously wounded, and the Lion not stirring, straight took his horse, and with all speed followed the way the Bear had taken, not respecting the many Knights that went in his rescue, nor the Empress outcries forbidding his enterprise, fearing he should faint through the much blood he had lost by his wounds, but counterpoising all these things with the great love he bare his Cousin,

stayed not, but in all haste thrust himself into those great and thicke Grobes, through which he left great quantity of his blood. that it was no little grief unto him, being on foot; for the way was so thick and naught, that it was impossible for him to ride therein, for else the running of his Horse would have put him in extreame danger. But continuing his way through that fearfull Grove, following the noise of a lamentable and pittifull cry which he hears: and being unable to pass further through weary faintness, set him down, and seeing how much blood he had lost by his wounds, and the danger which he knew his loving Cousin to be in, put him into a melancholly sorrow.

But long was he not so, by reason of a great noise, that suddenly arose out of the thicket thereby, whereat he faintly began to rise. And looking what might be the cause thereof, saw the most horrible and fearful bear, halting to the place where he was: but he setting himself befoze him to hinder his further hurting his Cousin, the Bear spying him, furiously ran to assault him, but by the Lyons experience he cast himself aside, and so let him passe with his Diabellish fury, and turning about to strike him, perceived the Bear to runne into a Cave that was at the foot of a steep Mountaine there adjoyning: whereat very joyfull at such a mischance, went to his cousin, who amazed at what he had seen, was likewise coming to him, and with great love embracing him, and seeing his wounds bleed very fast said: without doubt, (good cousin) you are sore wounded, & herefoze I pray you, rest here, while I seek out our company, and see your wounds dressed. I am not at this present (replied Don Bellianis) in such necessity, but may accompany you, yet would I gladly know what strange adventure is in you holow Cave. For as God shall help me, we hither are not come without some special secret. It behoves you not now (said Arsileo) for your wounds will not suffer you, to know the end of this strange adventure. For in the lingring of your cure, you may endanger your self greatly. Never may it be said (replied Don Bellianis) that I hence part & not know it. Whereupon hand in hand, they went till they came to the cave, whose obscure darkness was able to daunt the stoutest heart. But those haughty Princes arrived there fearless of any thing, and had scarce entered the same ten paces, but Don Arsileo unable to pass further, was

was (mangre his strength) thrust forth: and though he assayed to re-enter, yet could he not, but was with greater force still rebated back, which extreamly grieved him, seeing he could not enter to help his cousin. Mean while, he heard within a rumour of great blowes as if many knights were in fight together. For after the Prince parted from his cousin he went forwards through the cave, beating his head against the walls on every side, till he had passed that great darknesse thit he found himself in a Hall, where he saw a huge pillar, with certain Arabian letters, which he going to read by a light that proceeded from a window thereby, was forbidden it by a most deformed Giant, that seeing himself before (having in his hand bound with a mighty chain, the monstrous Bear, cause of his coming thither) with a terrible echoing sound of his horse voice, thus spake.

Thou art not permitted (poor captive donzell) to read the Letters of the brazen Piller, for I will hinder thee thereof, being here placed for the same purpose, until the Prophecie be fulfilled which it containeth. The Prince rested greatly amazed to see so mishapen a Monster, that he supposed him some infernal shadow, sooner then a mortall substance. But he with a never daunted mind, made this reply, I may not enter battell with thee (thou fearfull beast) having not yet received the order of Knighthood, which it I had, although thou shouldst never so much gainsay it, yet I would not go hence until such time as I had read them.

No reason shall serve thee (replied the Giant) to keep thee from death by my hands, for here was I set for that purpose to welcome him with it, that should presume to enter this forbidden habitation. And so ending his speech, he let loose the furious Bear, which with his devilish paws ran against the Prince, and the Giant laying hand to a great smiter hanging at his side, did the like and being nigh him, reached him a mighty blow on the head: but he that feared more the Giants smiter, then the Bears strength, though big and ugly, got between the Giants arms, that he could not hurt him, making the blow vain, and the smiter with the swift course it carried, lighted on the ground and flew out of his hand. Mean while the Prince strook the Giant upon the thigh, which no more hurt him then had it sahn on an Adamant: which he perceiving, turned to the bear, yet could no more wound him then

then the Giant, which beyed him to the heart; and seeing the Giant returned upon him, got behind the Piller, whereon the letters were, using it as a shield. But the Giant at this time so suddenly came upon him, that he could scarce effect it, who raising his steel-ed miter with both hands, gave him such a mighty blow on the head, that he thought it parted in two, yet it did him no harm, save that the strength thereof forced him backward two or three steps. At this time the bear took hold of his arm with his paws, that rent his hunting jacket, wounded him sorely; but seeing himself in so imminent danger, was once again forced to take the Piller for his defence, wherein he espied a sword fixed, whose workmanship was such, that the like in no time was ever seen wherein he more at that time rejoiced, than had he been invested universal Lord of the whole earth, or made a greater Monarch than his Father. And without delay stepping to it, very easily and lightly drew it forth, which he had no sooner done, but that there was heard a most horrible noise, as if the dissolution of the world was then, that unable to stand was faine to get hold of the Piller. Yet scarce was the earth-quake past, but that deformed Giant prepared himself to fight, which the Prince seeing, and joyful with the obtained sword, therewith thrust at his body with the utmost strength of his arme, that the sword appeared at his back, that straight the Giant fell to the ground, as doth some mighty Oak, rent with a whirlwind by the roots and looking for the Bear, found him also dead, as things that had no longer term of life, then the lasting of the incantment, which ended with the drawing of the sword from the Piller. And that noise being heard of Don Arfileo, that remained at the Caves mouth, tryed if he might again enter it, which without any trouble he did; and taking his hunting jaw in with him he cast himself resolutely into it, and come to Don Bellianis at the time he ended his Giants life, and was giving thanks to God, that he had delivered him from so great perill and danger, and with wondrous gladnesse to see themselves together again, ran to embrace each other, and Arfileo thus said. You have not been long (dear Cousin) though so sorely wounded as you were, in fighting this so strange and marvellous adventure, to your admirable honour and blazing fame, whereby I do assuredly believe, you will terminate all other with the like expedition, so
that

that the perpetual record of your fathers glorious name (which he in many years with his great pain obtained) will be, with the never dying memory of your famous deeds, and the eternitie of your acts in short time extinguished, and in obliuious darknesse overwhelmed. So not so, (good cousin, replied, Don Bellianis) but let us read these letters fixed upon this Pillar, which cost me no lesse blood, then if they contained some matter of great importance, which they read to this effect.

A Prophecy, and is fulfilled in the 37 Chapter.

In the time to come when the fiercenesse of the courageous Lions by the greatnesse of my skill shall be put in greater fear by them that in valour had so great part, the fearful keepers of my cave being slain, and the sword won wherewith the living shall be lost, and the dead put in possession of the re-obtained, with the greatest strangenesse of obtainers, which until that time was ever heard of, shall be restored to their royal bloud, and the true possessours known.

Greatly were the two Princes amazed hereby, not understanding those wordes, though plainly they were meant by Don Bellianis, seeing he had ended the adventure. Great is the need (said Don Arfileo) you seem to haue of present care for your wounds which I see to be so deep, that I fear you may fall into some notable danger, through the great quantity of blood you haue lost. Which was true, for though the Prince with the joy of the good successe, and in beholding his rich Sword, thought not on his great and dangerous wounds, which were such, that if any other of lesse, and weaker constitution, and couragiousnesse of mind had had them, could not so haue sustained himself.

But while they were thus talking from a most sumptuous Chamber there issued forth a beauttons Damsell, clothed in a Crimson sattin robe, so great, that the train thereof traileed on the ground.

This Lady was led between two Knights, ancient and of great gravity and on her attended twelue Damosels in the same livery, all shewed by their faces some heauy cause of melancholy sorrow, who being before the Prince, prostrated themselves on the ground: which he seeing, did the like, and intreated them to rise: to which he said, I will not rise most excellent Prince, untill you haue

habe first granted my demand. I do grant it (gracious Lady) said the Prince, and not only that, but many others, for my desire is only to serve such as your own self.

I do render many infinite thanks (replied she) neither do I look for lesse from so high and honoured a Prince as you, guarded with such royal bounty, and magnificent excellency: and rising, took him by the hand, and entered the chamber, which, though Don Bellianis had seen many very fair and rich in his Fathers Palace, yet judged he that to be the royallist he might see: for the walls seemed of shristall through which appeared such diversity of pictures, as the whole universe could scarce containe more: the floze seemed of Transparent Emerals, which so amazed their wondrous senses, that they stood a while gazing on it, till Don Bellianis turning to the Lady that held him by the hand, said, Although (fair Lady) the entrance of this Cave seemed so time-rous in sight, yet the variety of these rarities which is within containes, presents more shewes to the outward sight, then the whole world besides, and without reason, was it not made with such extremes as to be inhabited with such excellent beauty within, and guarded with so great fear without, to forbid the entrance to all attempters. The Lady conceiving great pleasure at the Princes words, answered I could not chuse but blush (most gracious prince) at your words (though so honored by them) knew I not your great courtesie, that far surpasseth all others at this time, which causeth me to prize my self more then I should, or my merits deserve (though I should not under your protection do it) because all honoured praises and deserved merits rest in your self. But overpassing this, which is so well known to every one, let my entreaties so prevaile with you, that my maidens may cure your wounds. I have no wound (replied the Prince) that so much needeth cure, save my desire to know the end of this adventure, and also who she is so honoreth me. Very quickly shall you know it (said Lord (saith the Princeesse) but first must your wounds be cured, least you incur some great danger, and after shall you know the cause of your coming thither, whom I am, and what else you will, all being done by her will that keeps me here. Whereupon the Prince was unclothed by those Ladies, and one of them dressed him most skilfully, having great knowledge in that art, and being

being laid on a sumptuous bed, they left him to his rest, the Prince Arfileo remained in talk with the damsell, of many things, especially with the adventure of that day, greatly admiring that Don Bellianis his cousin had atchieved, being so young of years. Do not so wonder most noble Prince (said the Lady) for in comparison of that this Prince shall do, this is the least. Much marvelled Arfileo to be known in that place, not remembering that he eber saw any of those Ladies and so continued in pleasing chat till supper time, when the tables being covered they sate down. And here leaue we them to shew what befell the Emperour Don Bellaneo, and what he do.

CHAP. III.

How the Empercur departed to seek his sonne.

AT the many out-cries the Empress gave Don Bellianis her son to return from the Bears pursuit, others of those knights that were a hunting hasted after, following the signes of the blood, till they came to the place where he did sit, and there found so much blood that they rested wondrous dismayd, yet saw they not the causes mouth by reason that the entry thereof, was there stopt, made on the further side. But not staying there, they began to seek the Prince among the thick groves, with all speedy diligence yet could not find neither footing nor sign of him, whereat they were so amazed seeing every where such quantity of blood, as they imagined he could not be far from thence, yet durst not without him return to the Empress. The like happened the Emperour, whom a certain Knight told how a horrible Bear dragged the Prince Arfileo, as is before mentioned, who understanding it, made no long stay, but accompanied with many Knights, began to seek that way he heard they were gone, and after long toils, seeing himself in that thick wood, and doubting some mischance might befall him, called for his armour, whereof he never went unprovided, as one delighting more in military success then in hunting, and was with all speed armed, and mounting on his horse, put himself through the Forrest with one sole Squire, commanding the rest of his train to seek the Prince on the other side: nought prebailed with him their intreaty, to go with him, but he commanded the Prince Don Brianel to take his lance, cast his shield at his back, and leaving his company, very sorrowfull departed, fully determined not

not to return to Constantinople; untill he heard either of the Princes likes or deaths, for whom he so greatly grieved that the more he thought to dissimble it, the more his sorrow increased. Thus in his journey, leaving him, we will declare what his Knights did, which a little after met with all the rest standing by the caves mouth, who knowing of the cruel chance that befell the Prince Don Bellianis, began greatly to lament him, but seeing it little prebaild, sought him a new in many places, till the dark some night overtook them, which forced them to return into their tents, where they left the Emperres, that enraged with griefe would have commanded their heads to be struckemoff; that consented to the Emperour to depart, not so much esteeming the Princes loss, as his sudden going through those dangerous woods, where certainly she thought he would be devoured by savage beasts, inhabiting that Forrest; wherefore straight recomended that with many lights and torches, they should again be looked for over all the mountains; but not finding them; they were thus deserved to be excused, and seeing neither of them could be found greatly grieved, they all returned to the City with bitter expletations, cursing the hour they first determined to come to that place cause of the Emperresses enraged grief, that none durst come unto her.

CHAP. IV.

The strange and dangerous adventure that befel the Emperor in the discovered Castle, seeking the Prince *Don Bellianis* his son.

The Emperor putting himself through that wild grove, taking his way diversly, having no certainty of any thing, so travelled till it was night, and with great pain, seeing he could effect nothing to his intent, by reason of the nights obscurity, alighted: so did Brianell, who unbribled their horses that they might feed on the green grasse, which with overmuch labour were so tired, that they could hardly any longer bear their Masters. But the Emperor being in great trouble and anguish of mind for the loss of both the Princes, yet more sorrowed for the Emperresses grief, which was not little, that he supposed that she should conceive, seeing neither of them return, then for ought else; for he certainly thought that if they were devoured by wild beasts, some signe thereof would be found, so that perswading himself the contrary, he

he parted aside to rest, but he had not scarce slept two hours, when suddenly he awaked at the loud cries he heard, that all the vallies resounded with the noise, which with more vehemence still seemed to increase, as if they proceeded from some in great necessity sustaining out-rage: whereat the good Emperour was so amazed with trouble on all sides, chiefly at that time, yet as one searching such dangers, commanded Don Brianel to bridle his horse, while he laced on his helin, and casting his shield at his back, mounted on his horse, not sitting foot in stirrup, and taking his lance thrust himself through the grove, following the voice he heard, imagining some of the Princes might be there: but feeling himself weary with much travel, yet supposing he approached every foot nigher to the lamentable cry, spied hard by him a high Castle, well fortified with towers, though by the darknesse of the night, he could little discern it. But coming to the gate, perceived the voice proceeded thence, and with great desire to know the cause, knocked at the same, yet none answered him; which more urged him to learn the force and violence within used, so that he went round about the Castle, but could find no entrance, whereat spied with delay, & the lamentable voice increasing, spies a rope, where with from the top of the Castle, they drew up stones, with a certain devise they had within. So the Emperour finding no other entry, had Don Brianell warn him, who said, What mean you to do, my good Lord: will you by force have your entrance through these stony walls? I intend nothing else (replied the Emperour) and therefore alight and Unarme me, which done bind my Armour to this cord, that therewith if I have time, I may arm my self aloft. I think it a meer madnesse (said the Prince) to hazard your person in so imminent a danger: for besides that the coming forth seems so difficult, I believe you hardly will be suffered to see what kind of people doth inhabit it, and so have scarce time to use your armour. I can do no otherwise (answered the Emperour) for it would be imputed to my everlasting shame, if I should suffer this wrong to passe unpunished, or not using that which my state binds me to. So dismounting, he was disarmed, and getting hold of the rope, taking with him his shield, he climed thereby to the Castle top, as easily as if he had gone up a pair of stairs, and calling for his armour Don Brianaell began to tyt it

to the Cord. But it otherwise fell out then he imagined: for though the Castle gallery, he saw above ten Knights, pursued by two most fearful Giants, and then other Knights, that laid on them great and mighty blowes, which the Emperour seeing and wanting time to arm himself, embraced his strong shield, and opposed himself against the Giants, calling unto the Knights that they should turn and not cowardly fly for fear. They being assisted with their shame, seeing a Knight without armor have the courage to attempt such an enterprise, returned against the furious Giant, who with fretting yet to see that one only man should resist their fury, set upon him with great Battel ayes in their strong hands. But he whose heart never feared their deeds, with an undaunted mind stayed for them, and making on lose his blow received the other on his shield which was such that parted in two, it fell to the ground, hardly saving his hand from following it, yet was it a little wounded. Whereat full of rage he struck one of them on the head, that the sword being of a good temper and governed with so puissant an arm, it cleft him down to the eyes, wherewith he fell with such violence, as when a tower is overturned by the fury of a sovain earth-quake, hereupon the other over-reached him with his aye, that had he not warded it with his sword it had been the last he should receive: for it descended with such rigour, that his sword was cut in two, and he wounded piteously on the head; who then seeing himself in such danger, closed straight with the Giant, that not able to shun him, they both took hold of one anothers arms demeaning themselves so valiantly that the Emperour with the surpassing strength he used, lost much blood by his wounds, which at length made him, being furiously moved, hoist his enemy in the air, and threw him to the ground even in the place where he came up, and quickly pushing him with his hands tumbled him headlong over the tower, that with the fall he dyed: yet least he might rest looking out of a window he called to Don Brianel to kill him before he rose who straight cut off his head. By this time the clearness of the morning began to shew itself, when the Emperour looking toward the flying Knights perceived them to be put to the worst, by reason of one whose valour excelled the rest, seemed to be of high descent and their commander, which the Emperour seeing, took one of the dead Giants

Shields

shields, meaning to rescue them, whereat the Knight turning to him, to see where he had left the Giants, for being busie in fight with the Knights, little thought they would have such fortune, and seeing that horrible Giant dead, and how that Knight made against him, rested amazed, yet with great fury taking his sword with both hands, made toward the Emperor, which raising aloft, gave him such a blow on the shield, that it made him bow to the ground, and doubling with another on the other side thereof, struck cleane from his arm, sorely wounding him on the Thigh, which the Emperor thought he had lost, that with mortal fury gave such another on the right arme, the greatest part thereof he cut, forcing the Knight to take his sword in his left hand, who with it would wound him, but the Emperor, that had learned to omit no occasion, sustaining himself on his Thigh as well as he could, struck at him such a blow, which lighting on his well tempered helme, it left him almost dead to the ground: yet greatly praising him for that he had seen him do (though he much had endangered him), would not any otherwise hurt him, but going to succor the Knights of the Castle, saw they had valiantly resisted their adversaries, and so seeing every thing accomplished to his desire, knéled and rendered God great thanks for his delivery from so great danger, being the greatest he ever had been in, finding himself unarmed. But going to rise, was not able to stand on his legs, though he greatly striven, to do it by reason of his wound, which by that time was cold. And turning to them of the Castle, that already had slain their enemies, who extremely grieving for to see him, would uncloath him to cure his wounds. But he would not till first they called his Page that remained without, which they did, wonderfully amazed at the haughty courage of the Knight, that so admirable and unheard of deeds had done, coming to such a place unarmed, which they judged to be the greatest act that ever was spoken of.

And calling Don Brianell they told him what the knight would have, who very joyful, because they told him, he was in no danger of death, straight mounted up the Castle stairs, where the Emperor was, greatly doubting his life, by reason he enterpassed that adventure, without armour, and went, to the place where they unclothed him, and there dressed his wounds, which done, he knéled

kneled down, demanding his royall hands to kisse them. The Emperoz embraced him, and made him rise; to whom Don Brianel said, Great was the fear that I was in for you, my most excellent Lord; in that I was barred from bringing you your armour, seeing you run into so certain perill, yet think I more easily you triumphed down the Giant, then you did your selfe mount up unto the top, giving him no leisure to use the rope for his easier descent. The Emperoz much delighted in his pleasant speech, and commanded them to leave him alone to rest his tired body, which the knights did, taking Don Brianel with them, and desired him they might know who his Master was, and his name, assuring themselves the whole earths circuit could not afford his like for valor, and what chance had at such time brought him thither.

To whom Don Brianel answered, he was called the unknown Knight: and though he had a long time accompanied him, he knew no other name he had, and that travelling over these mountaines, he heard the great cries within the Castle, with what else happened. So leaving their discourse, and thinking it time, went to serve the Emperoz meat, whom they found more quiet (the pain of his wounds being mitigated) and after he had eaten, demanded the occasion that those Giants so used them. We know not good sir (answered they) save how a Knight that came with them, knocked the last night at the Castle gate, intreating us to let him in, requiring a lodging for that night, which we yielding to, opened the gate mistrusting nothing lesse, then that which befel: but in the opening, he set upon us with those pitiless Giants whom you saw; and when we saw so many inconveniencies, sent forth those cries together with many women that were within. This (good sir) is all that we know of this adventure: so that if you had not come when you did, we had all suffered a most cruel death.

Well me said the Emperoz, what is become of a Knight clothed in an azure armour: he is prisoner in a tower (replied they) until we know your farther resolution what shall be done with him, worthily deserving to be tormented with a cruel death for his treachery: but do not so (said the Emperoz) for he is a very good Knight, and deserveth no ill usage, and therefore have care he want nothing he shall need; for I would not for any thing he should miscarry: of him shall we know the cause of their traitterous design, which

which sure is not without special occasion. Hereupon the Knight went straight and dressed his wounds, who though he had lost much blood, seemed courageous as if he were at liberty. And after they had dressed him, he was conveyed to a fair chamber providing him with all necessaries as the Emperor had commanded. Who in this order remained ten days in the cure of his wounds; when remembering the task he had undertaken, determining to depart thence went first to the wounded knight whom he found greatly attended of his wounds: and approaching to his bed side, asked him how he felt himself. Well enough (said he) though with no little grief for my bad success: yet am I not loopy to be overcome, seeing it was by him whose courage and valor the strength of mighty Gants could not abate. But one thing I intreat of you, Sir Knight, by the courtesy you have shewn me, you would be so good to tell me your name, that in those places where I shall come, I may publish your famous deeds. It pleaseth me (replied the Emperor) conditionally: you also let me know yours, with the cause of your coming hither, with the truth whereof thereto such a knight as you is bound.

I am so desirous to know you said the Knight, that though it be against the promise I have made, and you promising me to keep it secret, I will not deny it. Whereby I give you my faith (answered the Emperor) and still know, I am Don Bellaneo Emperor of Sicily: that by a certain adventure, not far from hence, I parted from my Wife, the rest having happened as you have seen. He immortall God, said the Knight, fetching a great sigh: are you he, whose name is so feared among all the Pagan nations? And he that never refused to assault so terrible and fierce Gants? And in brief, he whose invincible mind sheweth how true the everlasting fame of your perpetual deeds is: and through the world of you is spread. He great Soldan, now by this days success, thy determined purpose is utterly made void, having so strong an adversary left this in the world. It therefore behoves thee no more to think of peace. And turning to the Emperor who greatly amazed at his words stood gazing on him, and observing his countenance great supposing renowned: Whence the matter I shall disclose to be of like consequence thereto: I will in few words unfold the thing thereof, though ill being of it, to my self more then

to any resulteth greatest loss. I know that your name (so fearful among all Gentiles) being published in the Soldan of Sicilianas court, with the great destruction made of his people by you, and in all Paganisme moved him by promise to bind himself, to give the one half of his dominions, with the marriage of his daughter, by whose valour your head were brought him. Also promising, that if in the enterprise he died, the half of his said dominions, should notwithstanding be granted to his successe heirs. So I understanding the great promise the Soldan had made, and greatly loving his daughter, resolutely resolved I departed to the Kingdome of Antioch, whereof I am Lord, and with my self having determined what I ought to do, I left my Court, accompanied with 500. Knights, and 30. Giants, purposing at your coming out of your palace, to kill or imprison you: so shipping our selves we landed not far from hence, left our ships at anchor thither to return with your conquest. And that this we might better compass unknown and unseen, we agreed to take this Castle, and here remain till occasion were offered us to effect this pretence, being informed of the state of all things by a man whom on the coast we took, whereby we thither came as you have heard, and easily thought to have taken it, being minded to let none survive to carry the news abroad: but your incomparable valour hath frustrated our intent. Thus have I declared unto you all that in this case I can, whereto your great bounty and magnanimous clemency forced me: for notwithstanding I had so massacred your subjects, you caused me thus to be cured. My name is Don Gallaneo of Antioch, if you ever heard of me before: and so he made an end of his speech. The Emperour rested wonderfull amazed seeing with what audacity Don Gallaneo had discovered him a deed of such waight, for which he might greatly fear his deserved punishment: but judged him of haughty courage. considering how confidently he had put himself in his hands, having against him committed so high treachery: and shewing no manner of alteration, made him this answer. Truly Prince Don Gallaneo you have plainly expressed the ballancy of your mind, in so openly bewraying that which by any other means, I could not have known, whereby you have doubled the cause of my imaginary thoughts, seeing in such a knight so little shame, that without further consideration,

deration, should by treason seek to spill my innocent blood, which in so great a Prince as you, seemeth more odious then in any other, being by order of Knighthood, bound to be vertuous, and abhor all detestable actions, and to be an example to your Subjects, least against your self they might commit the like. Yet would I not for all my state, you should have had such confidence in me, so to discover your self, that I might (not knowing it) let your own self, see your self confounded in your own imaginations. But seeing it is done here you shall remain in this Castle, till I further determine of your being. Yet for all this (saids Don Gallaneo) assure your person, for not far hence is the remainder of my power, and easily may you incur some greater danger, though your person be such as I have tryed: yet among them are so fierce and mighty Giants, that will not think much to cleave your body armed in two with one blow. I have thought saids the Emperour what in this case shall be done: and thereupon commanded his horse and Don Brianel to be saddled. And Don Brianel foreseeing the perill that might ensue, beseeched the Emperour on his knees to give him the order of Knighthood to serve him in that enterprize: which the Emperour denved, promising to do it another day. But here we leave them and returne to the Prince Don Bellianis and Arsileo, whom we left with the Lady in the Cave.

CHAP. V.

How Don Bellianis with the Lady departed from the Cave, and by what strange adventure he and Arsileo were Knighted.

IT is recorded by Frisken, that the Prince Don Bellianis, with his cousin Arsileo, remained ten days in the Damselfs cave, till the Prince was able to travell, who grieving much, for the sorrow the Emperour and Emperesse would sustaine, and acknowledging how much bound he was to that Lady determined to depart, yet greatly desired to know the end of that adventure. Wherefore the Prince Arsileo, a day before their departure, intreated her to declare unto them the whole occasion of her being in the cave, and what she would require them to doe in her service: although they needed not make many offers, being as they were so bound to her for so many favours, that at her command without intreaty, they ought to doe, even with the hazard of their

lives. The daniel with a sorrowfull countenance, as one that remembred her forpassed misfortunes, could not with-hold her tears, but with watry cheeks, and eyes like flowing springs with running streams, at last thus began. I cannot (excellent Princes) so intirely expresse unto you the cause of my grief, as I could desire, for the great sorrow my grieved heart sustaines, suddenly suppressing me, and breaking into a salt shower of brinish tears, will not giue place unto the exact utterance of my words, yet as I may I will do it, I was (most noble Princes) daughter unto Pompeiano (not long since King of Antioch) and am called Aurora, that being at the Soldane of Babylons Court, accompanying his daughter the most beautiful Florisbella, whose perfected beauty, and absolute vertues, so farre surpasseth all other of her time, as doth the Sun all lesser Stars. To this Court came a knight, whose name for a long time was not known, sading by certain Images in his shield, was called the Knight of the three Images, who shewed himself so valiant, that no ten knights in the whole Court was so strong and hardy, as durst maintain the field against him. This knight throughout the Soldans Empire, performed such deeds of haughty prowess that in generall among all men he was accounted a second Mars, and the Soldan did no less esteem of him, alwaies having him in his company, whersby he thought himself worthy of greater dignities, and so became amorous of the diuine Florisbella, for whose love a long time he suffered great grief and much solitude, not daring to manifest it to any: at length, seeing nothing prebail to expel the desire, when one day the Soldan, with all his Court was gone one hunting, he remained alone in the Pallace, and after some pleasant discourse, discovered unto me the secrets of his love, intreating me that in his name I would intreate the Princeesse to accept him for her knight, wherewith she finding her self agrieved, answered, that by no means she would do it, commanding him no more to imagine any such madness, lest the Soldan her father should by chance hear thereof, which if he did, it might cost him little lesse then his life. But he nothing weighing this her answer, found means that the Princeesse might know the extream anguish of his perplexed heart, inthralld by her beauty, so that I think that some harm might thereby ensue, declared it to the Soldan, who thereupon

The Honour of Chivalry.

21

upon commanded him to depart his Empire, but he not knowing the occasion, very heavily before his departure, told him that what he did was against reason, in commanding him to depart his dominions, for he was a Prince able to shew him that such as he ought not to be so used. And departing the Court towards the Soldan of Siconia, called the great Sophi of Persia, where suspecting I was cause of his exile, began with fire and sword to enter the Kingdome my fathers territories, in such sort wasting and spoiling them, then slaying the King he took possession of the whole kingdom, giving it to the knight of the kindred, called the Prince Don Galaneo, reputed a man of great valor. In which time not knowing of his success, I went from the Soldans Court, home to my fathers, and fearing to fall in their hands, by counsell of a wise woman called Bellona, entred in a boat with these damselfs you here see, together with the said woman, and by her direction arrived in this countrey, and was by her conducted to this cave, where she had me remain, for I should quickly be delivered by the Prince of Greece, & his cousin of Hungary, fore-telling me every thing that hitherto hath happened, and moreover he had me give you horses and armor, which here she left, wherewith you shall be knighted by a strange adventure, but what it was she would not tell. Thus have I declared the occasion of my being here; and the fearful bear the wise woman here left, was hither to bring the Prince Arfileo as you saw, and the mighty Giant which you saw, remained keeper of the Cave who might not be slaine with any weapon, but the sword which you drew out of the Pillar that he guarded, so that (great Lord) the remedy of my misfortune resteth in your hands and our departure may be when and so soon as you shall think good. I am content (answered he, wondering amazed at the Damselfs discourse, but I would willingly take with me an host of men, that you may more easily recover your kingdome. I attend here no other hope but yours (said she) and as for any other, I was informed we should not need. Whereat the Prince (seeing that was her will) commanded straight provision to be made for his departure: so all things being ready, they mounted on horse-back, and the Damselfs on their Dalfreys accompanied with two ancient knights that carried the armor that the Princeesse Aurora, had spoken of, which they see-

ing, took it forth of the cases, which were as appertained to nobel knights. The prince Don Bellianis armor was of colour Drengetawny, with a sea-wave so big, that it seemed to overhelme a ship there figured. In his shield was portrayed the picture of a most beautiful Lady, with a knight kneeling before her, as if he craved mercy at her hands, from whom she turned her face in answer, with an inscription to this effect.

Let him dye for so departing,

At our first and sudden meeting :

Leaving thereby my dear sight dim

Of his, when I desired to see him.

Which was written in Arabian Letters, that the Prince well understood. The prince Arsileos were merry, in the midst whereof was fighting a griffon with a most terrible dragon, which were parted by a Damsel that made peace between them, which when they saw so faire, became desirous to put them on, and causing the Princeesse and Damsell to stay, were armed with them, which so well fitted them, as if of purpose they had been forged for them, where with being armed set forthwards on their journey, and having gone not far from the cave, spied before them a fair Castle, which till then they had not seen, nor yet when they entred they Cave. The Princeess and the Ladies masked themselves, because the heat of the Sun was great, and the rest were disguised, that they might not be known, and approaching the Castle they saw two knights come forth thereof, the one in a white armor like a nobel knight, the other that was bigger of personage, and seemed of great valour: was clad in the richest armour that might be seen, of an azure colour, with many imperiall crowns. In the middle of his shield was figured the image of Mars, as the Pagans use to picture him. These knights of the Castle led with them a man on Horseback undoted and unpured, and his head muffled like a prisoner, which made the Prince desirous to know what they were. As God shall help me (said Arsileo) if I were knighted, I would procure to know those knights, and why they lead the knight prisoner. Do not therefore trouble your self (good cousin) said Don Bellianis, for easily may it be done, and so let it be my charge, of going forward, they met a squire that came to them, and said, Sir knight, my master that is he in the white armor, desireth you

you by me, because he receiued this day his order of Knight-hood, you would be content to break a lance with him, for you seeming no less valiant then courteous, he desireth to try if your deeds do agree with your outward appearance. Tell him (saide Don Bellianis) we would willingly accomplish his desire, were we but knighted and would gladly receiue the order at the Grecian Emperors hands, for this & no other cause letteth us from fulfilling his mind. And you may also tell them (saide Arfileo) were it not for that it should be commanded him to yeld us account of the Knight, what he is, and why they led him prisoner. The page returned to his master, and told him that answer, which he reputed to great arrogancy in them but seeing they expected his answer, he went to them, and somewhat cholerick he said, Which of you is the Knight that gave my page so proud an answer? You should need to ask it (saide Arfileo) were we knighted, deseruing nothing more then to satisfie your request, but seeing (saide the Knight) you go to require that order at the Emperour Bellaneo's hands, to save you that labor, I assure you he is not at Constantinople, nor of him is there any news, and therefore know that yonder knight is such a Prince, both in possessions and valor, as the Emperour little surpasseth him, where-fore that our Combat may be effected, you may receiue the order you seek of him. Although it were to chastise the maonelle that possesseth you (replied Don Bellianis) we will now receiue that sacred order, & calling one of the damfels, sent her in thier names, to the Knight in the azure armour, who going where he was, thus said, The Knights you see with you Ladies (noble Sir) intreat you, seeing they expected the order of armes at the hands of the Emperour of Greece, whom your companion, saith is absent from Constantinople, and they supposing you no less noble then valiant in outward shew, to grace them with the said order, that they might satisfie your Companion, with the breaking of some few lances, certifying you that without scruple you may doe it (answered he) though it were better they receiued it by the Emperour, with those ceremonious rights as such honor requirereth, but seeing they are thus content, it shall be, and so making each other with such kind Greetings and Salutations, as if they knew the consanguinity between them, and the Princes requested the knight again to accomplish his request; they

they all alighted, and he taking their oaths, were knighted, and the Princeesse Aurora girded Don Bellianis with his sword, whilst the nobell knight did the like to Arfileo: which done, they rested so content as they were created the greatest Lords of the world, and the knight embracing them said. I pray God faire knights, that in all things you may attaine no lesse honoz then the royall state of your descent both require: to whom they rendered great thanks for this his kind benediction, and mounted again on horseback.

C H A P. VI.

The brave and dangerous fight between the two Princes, and the Knights of the Castle.

After the knights were all on horseback mounted, he in the white armor enraged with kindled wrath of desired revenge against Arfileo, for the arrogant words he had sent him, that with animated courage proceeding from a valiant heart said to him. Sir knight, if with weapons you dare defend your proud answer sent me by my Page, now have you time to do it. Arfileo hearing this, and being no lesse furious then he answered never a word, but turned his Horse, and taking so much field as would suffice for his carrier, couched his lance against his adversary, who with no lesse fury met him in the middle of his court, incountering so rigorously, that their lances flew in small pieces, and meeting with their bodies, the knight of the Castle fell down over his horse crupper: the like happened to Arfileo, but that he fell on his feet, with the saddle between his legs, for by the strong encounter the girths broke, so that both astonished at his chance, laid hands to their well cutting swords, and joining one to the other struck so strong mighty blows on their well tempered helms, that it caused great fear in their companies, each doubting the losse of their friend, for they wounded one another with admirable strength extremely endangering their flesh, cutting their armor; bruising themselves, spilling their blood in great abundance, yet the knight of the Castle, was worse wounded by reason of the good armor Arfileo wore, and being the valiantest knight (next Don Bellianis) in those dayes. But the knight of the Castle, with the desire he had to overcome his adversary, nothing regarded his wounds: wherefore he in the same armor being skillfuller in such

such matters, plainly perceived, that if he gave not over, he either would remain vanquished or slain, yet knew he not how to retnce-
 dy it, nor how to forbid it, which made him storme like a storm,
 seeing no means to prevent the danger like to befall his friend.
 On the other side Don Bellianis viewing the cruell fight, and
 though he saw Arfileo more courageously double his blowes, yet
 greatly feared the event thereof, seeing with what nimblenesse
 the other fought. And considering how he might prevent his
 fear, hept to the Princesse Aurora, and craved of her leave to
 probe himself with the knight in the azure armor, that he might
 thereby aid the Prince Arfileo if he should be put to any disadvan-
 tage. The Princess though unwilling condescended, seeing the
 necessity of the case required. Whereupon he went to the knight
 in blew, and said. Although valiant sir, it may seem discourtesie,
 having no occasion to provoke us to fight, yet the necessity of our
 companions moves us unto it, and urgeth me now to crave the
 breaking of a lance with you, whiles the combate dureth if you
 please. It doth please me replied the knight of the castle, with this
 promise, that either of us may help his fellow in his need. The
 prince that nothing else wished, was exceedingly content there-
 with. And so both took that part of the field that they thought meet
 for their encounters, ran one against the other, their lances couched
 in their rests, and met so furiously that the shivers of their spears
 flew up into the air out of sight, yet moved one another no more
 then had they run against a tower, which greatly amazed the knight
 of the Castle, having hitherto overthrowen to the earth all that e-
 ver he jousted with. And so with raging fury upon Don Bellianis,
 he also made to ward him, who before he could defend himself with
 his shield, received so strong a blow, that it made him lean his
 head on his horses neck leaving so affronted, that when the Prin-
 cess saw it, she was affronted with a cold sweat over all her body,
 and doubling another on him, the Prince lifted up his shield which
 was thrown quite to the ground, but in two, that the fine temper
 wherewith the wife Bellona did forge it, nothing prevailed against
 the never conquered arm of that most valiant knight. But hereat
 Don Bellianis feeling himself so handled, strook the knight on his
 helm, that he supposed the whole weight of some tower had fal-
 len thereon, and the blow lighted with such mighty strength, that
 it

It had almost throlwn him down, yet the horse by the force thereof, was forced to set his knees on the ground, and his helm, with his armed head-piece under it, were both cut, and the furious sword not resting there, descending downward on the horse, that all his caparisons made of hardest steel were cut: the imprisoned knight seeing so great a blow, cried out and said, I cannot beleve that valiant Hectors terror to the Greeks, with all his admirable forces could have given the like blow, and now you knight hath found his match. But they amazed at each others strength, having again met, bestowed on themselves such terrible strokes, that their armor being rent in many places, were grievously wounded, and the knight of the Castle turning towards his fellow, saw he was so weak, through the much blood he had lost, they greatly pittying him, which new courage redoubled his blows on his adversary, yet all his toil little availed him, for Don Bellianis seeing this was the first battel that ever he fought, and grieving that the other knight should so long withstand him, having endured three hours fight, and lost his shield, and feeling himself wounded in many places took his sword with both hands, stretched himself on his stirrups, thinking to end the battell with that sole blow; but the knight of the Castle being very circumspect in such matters made shew to waste him, covering himselfe very well with his shield: And seeing the blow came right downward on his head, closed between his arms, that he could not strike him, save onely with his sword hilts, which was so mightily, that he could not for a while feel himself: & with the strength thereof the sword fell out of his hands, hanging at his arm by a little chain, the knight in the closing wounded him on the arme with a thrust, which resisted by the armor, ran between the harness and his elbow, making him no little wound, and Don Bellianis seeing him so nigh, took him between his arms, and spurring his horse, hopped him very lightly from the saddle: the knight likewise getting hold of him, so long strugled together that both came to the ground, almost one foot hanging in the stirrop, and bravely holding together, strided to overthrow each other, not daring to lose their hold, so greatly they feared the overmatched strength of one another: while they were thus in this strife, from out the thickest of the wood, they espyed the number of Thirty Knights, and four Giants,

Giants, who seeing the Knight in the Azure Armour in such danger, all spurred against Don Bellianis, not regarding the outcries of the imprisoned knight, that said they should not hurt him. But he had been slaine if they had not feared to arme the Knight in the Azure Armour: who losing the other, and seeing his horse nigh him (though he were greatly wounded) mounted thereon, with setting his foot in his stirrop, with such agility that he made them all marbel, & as one that had done nothing all that day, with a valiant courage, he rushed in among those knights, and at three blows he slew three. The Prince Arsileo at this time having withdrawn himself to breath, seeing his companion in such danger, not looking to his adversary, leapt on his horse: so did the two old knights that with the Princess came, but all of them might little prevaile against the furious multitudes, with the knights of the Castle also, that prepared themselves to aid them. Here declareth Friison, that the two first knights of the Castle were, the Emperoz Don Bellaneo, that had knighted Don Brinael, which was he that fought with Arsileo, having armed himselfe with Don Gallaneos armoz, and setting him on horseback (as you have heard) meaning to conuey himself to Constantinople, the better to passe unknown through his knights, that where they assailed the Princes, imagining the Emperoz to be Don Gallaneo, and therefore so furiously assaulted them as is expressed. But the Emperoz, fearing that Don Gallaneo (having that opportunity to effect his determination) would discover himself to his knights, called to him one of those men that came from the Castle, and commanded him with all speed possible to haste him to Constantinople, and tell the King of Hungary in what necessity he left him, telling him his name, which till that time he had not discovered to any of the Castle. And putting off his gantlet, gave him his Royal seale of Armes, which the King very well knew, commanding him he should with all speed returne. The man greatly amazed, took the Signet, and hastened him to Constantinople, staying nothing by the way, and in short time arrived in the City, which was some five leagues distant from the Castle, and demanded for the King of Hungaries Palace. It was told him that he was in the Emperors Court, whither he straight wayes went and finding him, kneeled before him half speechlesse and

dismayed told him in what necessity he had left the Emperour, whereat the King greatly amazed took the King, and saying nothing to the Emperesse, commanded the guard which continually was in the Pallace, being above two thousand Knights, to begin to march towards the Castle, commanding all the whole City to arme it self, and follow him, which fearing some sudden Treason to be at hand, raised so great tumult of armor through the same, that the inhabitants arose in an uproare, as if with Enemies it had been besieged. And so though the common people, knew the present necessity required speedy hast, were somewhat long ere they set forth. And in their way we leave them, till we have shewen what in the meane season befell the Emperour and the Princes.

CHAP. VII.

The end of the fight between the Emperour and the Princes, against Don Gallaneo and his men.

AS soon as the Emperour had dispatched the messenger to Constantinople he determined to aid the Knights, that maintained a terrible battel with the Giants, and their Troups being most cruelly wounded, by reason of those remorselesse Friends, the Prince Don Gallaneo, seeing his knights were deceived, with great out-cries uncovering his face, called to them who when they heard his voyce, and saw his face straight knew him, greatly amazed at such a chance, and leaving the fight against the Pirates, ran to embrace him, not knowing the cause why that knight should be then armed with his armour. And though the Emperour saw him go toward them, yet could he not stop him. And Don Gallaneo seeing that opportunity was offered him, and not minding to spend his time in speeches with his men, said. Now is it requisite (oh Knights) that you revenge me on him that weareth my Armour. For know, if you take him or slay him, our enterprize therewith is ended, for he is the Emperour of Constantinople, whom we came from far Countries to seek, being he hath slain my Knights, and took me prisoner, using me as you have seen. The Knights that aimed at no other mark, together in a Troop, set upon the Emperour and Don Brianell of Macedon, that was with him. But when Don Bellianis

and

and Arfileo heard that he was the Emperour his Father, greatly grieved, for what with him befell them, and with eager fury, they set upon those Traiterous Knights. But these damned Gyants that came before, the rest opposed themselves against them; striking strong and mighty blows. And one of them raising aloft a huge iron mace between his hands, struck the Emperour therewith that if he had not warded it with his shield, it had shivered his head in pieces: yet it rested not there but descended on his horses neck, killing him dead to the ground, with his master on his neck. The Emperour for all this strook him on his arms that he threw them to the earth with the mace between them.

Now there was the Emperour in great danger of his Life. For when his horse fell, he took one of his legs under him, and Don Gallaneo, that had already put on one of the dead Knights armour, coming thither at that time with two other Gyants, all the three alighted from their horses, intending there to strike off his head. The Prince Don Bellianis that saw his Father in that extremity, dismounting in all hast went to succour him, but ere he came, Don Gallaneo, as one whom his death would highly advantage, wounded him on the head, and the two Gyants with their Paces raised aloft, with mighty strength discharged them on his head; so that he for that time not able to draw him from under his horse, with one blow overthrew Don Gallaneo, cutting a sunder his shield and helm, and grievously wounded him on the head. And being about to avoid those Gyants blows, could by no means shun them, but both discharging their Hellish fury on his head made him how to the earth, and so staggered him that he could scarce stand. And though the spacious world, contained not his like for admirable strength, yet with seeing his Father in that case, and himself so handled by such infernal monsters, glorying in nothing but bloody cruelty, abhorring all good and decent order of equall Partisall discipline, so doubled his undaunted courage in himself, strook at one of the Gyants heads, who thinking to defend it by crossing his Pace over his Helme, had it cut clean in two, hand by the handle, and the Furious Sword lighted on the horse girls that lay on the Emperour, that cutting them on both sides, he gave his Father liberty to draw

his leg away, pushing the horse away from him quickly, arose, yet very weary, and seeing how Don Bellianis with one blow he reached one of the deformed Giants with great strength upon his Thigh, he felled him to the ground, and both with another he maintained a hot fight. And he also saw that Don Brianell and Arfileo with eight Knights that came out of the Castle to succour them, were in a fierce battell with the other Giant and Knights. And that Arfileo being buſied with a Giant, the other Knights being in number greatly inferiour to their enemies, were by them put to the worse: wherefore the Emperour went to aid them: but ere he arrived, the Giant and Arfileo having closed, dismounted each other, that the Giant leaving his foot in the stirrop, Arfileo spurred his horse backward, making him run away, and drag his Partner after him, who within a while breathed his last. And so he turned with the Emperour courageously to help their companions, and arrived when their adversaries were little able to make them longer resistance, specially because Don Bellianis had slain the other Giant: At which instant arriving where he was, scarce Ten of them remained with life, which to save themselves fled into the Woods. Whereupon they alighted (not minding to pursue them) to bind their wounds.

But scant had the Emperour time to render due thanks for their great help, much admiring their exceeding valour, when the rest of Don Gallaneos Knights issued from the thickest of the grove, who being advertised of the success of their enterprise, and not of their losse, came in great hast to participate of the glory they should obtain by the Emperours death.

Before them came those stern and ugly Giants, with their Lances, seeming huge pine Trees, with such tempestuous fury, that they had not leisure to bind their deep Wounds. Great was the sorrow the Emperour hereby sustained, seeing the Ray of the King of Hungary, but as neither he nor the other Knights could by death-seeming terrour be daunted, with a courageous heart thus he said. Now is the time (brave Knights) that you must shew the magnanimity of your invincible minds, since in your first adventure fortune hath so directed you that the glory of the forepassed worthies, by the victory of this own battell shall be extin-

extinguished, though herein we yield the Tribute of our Lives to all-conquering death, which being naturall to all men, should least be feared: but in the omnipotent powers of him, that this circled universe did frame, I doe trust he will not permit the valour of such Knights, in such short time to perish, but so strengthen them, that the perpetuall fame of their royall acts may remain eternized to all succeeding ages. Little need we to be encouraged to suffer the fearfull stroke of Death (replied Arileo) for where the person of so victorious an Emperour is endangered, ours can be but the least of all most little losses. I thought no lesse (answered the Emperour) but I will speak it, that my selfe imitating your valour, might encourage my decaying courage by your discreet reply, by which since I perceiue you ressed undaunted, and animated against ensuing dangers it behoved us, lest we be suddenly assailed and breethrowne with their horses, which greatly will hazard us; that we take before us you knight that lyeth upon the ground, meaning Don Gallaneo, that very sorely wounded, lay without his helme, for these that come towards us be his men, and fearing to hurt him, will not molest us with their horses. This will be very good, said Don Bellianis, as also that one of those knights speedily conduct those Ladies into the castle, for I do more regard their safety, then I esteem my own life. So effecting all things, they on foot expected the coming of the Giants and Knights, which were aboue 500 in number who approaching, were greatly amazed to see that slaughter of knights and Giants, which if their knights that fled had not told them of, they would not have beleued it. Whereupon two of the foremost Giants, with a cousin of Don Gallaneo, called Don Galseo the unknown, thinking to ower-run them with their horses, perceived they defended themselves with Don Gallaneo, wherefore the commanded all their knights to alight on foot, which they would by no means do, because they saw coming from the City a great troupe of knights, which so soon arrived, as had they alighted, with little trouble they had all been slain, yet notwithstanding some ten of them dismounted together, making account to end a fight with the Emperours death, till the rest went against the knights, from the city marched, for being in a strange Land they reputed ebery one their enemy. But the K. of Hungary & was he the same with

the

the knight, in such extreme fearing the danger like to ensue, commanded his men to wheel about to the further side, compassing so much field, that with safety they might arrive where the Emperor and the other knights were combating, fearing that if they should encounter with their enemies, the Emperor might in the mean time be slain, and their host and aid come in vain: the knights being all chosen and valiant, such as continually guarded the Emperors person, and sufficient every one to be a commander of many, took their compass in such manner, that without turning their backs, or on their adversaries breaking their lances, fell on sudden, where the Emperor and Princes were, whom they found fighting like angry Lions, for that Don Brianell was pitiously wounded by two Giants, & by them beaten to the ground, so that the Emperor & Don Bellianis to defend him, bestirred themselves so bravely against them, esteeming them but as common knights. On the other side the Prince Arsileo knelt with his knee on the ground for one of the Giants had thrust him quite through the thigh. But when the King of Hungary arrived with his men, he alighted with some twenty knights, leaving the rest in fight with their adversaries, whereof some being round beset with Christians, the others set themselves against Don Bellianis, seeing he was the sole cause of their utter ruine, and notwithstanding his mighty blows two of those Giants closed with him: but he not dismayed therewith laid hand on his dagger, which at his back continually he wore, and stabbed it in the Giants back that held him betwixt his armes, which done, with mighty strength it ran through his body to the hilts. Which was not so speedily performed but the other wounded him grievously, that his armour being in three places rent, and his flesh in many places bruised and cut, and seeing himself in such notorious peril, took the heavy boisterous Giant in his arms, and with his puissant forces hoisted him aloft, and with a mighty fall tumbled him to the earth, where presently he chapt off his head, which done turning to the Emperor, he saw him close with an other Giant, and fearing some sinister hap might befall him through the much blood issuing from his wounds whereat the Prince greatly wondered how he could stand on foot, strook the Giant such a blow on the leg, that he sundred it quite from the body. All which notwithstanding

withstanding seeing the number of the knights still increase upon them, and that the trampling of the horses might greatly annoy them, and doubting that the Emperour seeing he had lost much blood, would not be able to mount a horseback took him in his arms, and set him on the Gyants horse he last slew. The like did he to the Prince Arfileo, that though the wound on his thigh could not do it himself; and greatly esteeming Don Brianel, for that he had seen him that day do, and because he came in his fathers company, he took him from the ground and commanded a knight to convey him to the castle, ther to apply him such remedies, as that he might recover his lost senses. And now at the last when he would get a horse for himself, could not so easily compass it, for all the rest of the knights had turned themselves with a hellish fury upon him, wher he was like to be slain out-right for Don Galseo having vanquished the Emperours men, set on him, wounding him with cruel and remorseless blowes. But finding himself encompassed with death began to strike on every side, that unhappy was he on whom any lighted, for so fearfull and deadly they were that with six blowes he strook down three knights, and two Gyants and seeing Don Galseo was he that most molested him, strook at his leg with such strength, that had the sword fallen with the edge down-right, it had cut it clean off, yet it rased away all the armour there, and seeing him within his reach, plucked his shield out of his hand, and with it beat him to the ground from himself, and so none daring molest him, without setting sat on stierop he mounted on Don Galseos horse. At this time hither came the Emperour, that seeing him so nimbly mounted, being sorely wounded, was so amazed that he hardly beleved what his eyes beheld and that which he most admired was to see him so fierce and courageous in this first adventure that euer happened him. And emulating his valiant deeds, he followed him as if he were his teacher, and he his papill, to whom Don Belliamis being nigh him, said, We think our knight our men begin to lose the field, so think I, answered the Emperour, and calling Arfileo, joyned all three together with the King of Hungarie that was in the vanguard, animating his fainting knights, that with fresh courage so gallantly returned to the fight, as if at that present they began, giving and receiving most terrible blowes of those hell-burned Gyants.

Gyants. But Don Bellianis seeing the wonders the Emperour his Father had performed, imagining his own acts none in comparison of his, with such vehement rigour he assaulted his Foes, that his men regained their lost advantage. About this time Don Galleo arose from his Trance: and seeing his knights retired back, and that the most part of the Gyants were slain, and that great Troopes armed Knights, not farre from whence they were Fighting, came with speedy hast toward them, which he judged to be aboue two thousand, and seeing his intent could not for that time take effect, turned to Don Gallaneo, that lay by him, and taking one of those Horses, that loose came about, called one of his Knights, commanding him to set the Prince his cousin before him very secretly, unknown to the Emperour, and the rest, he put himself through the grove, and learning of a man whom he met the next way to the Sea coast, went thither, where finding his ship, and fearing he might be pursued, stripped himself, and Don Gallaneo, commanding the Partners to hoyst the sails, and put unto the Sea: which they straight did, laying his cousin on a bed in his Cabin, and applyed to him many remedies, to recover his senses, that the better they might dresse his wounds: where we leaue them, returning to declare the end, and successe of the battel.

CHAP. VIII.

How the battel being ended, *Don Bellianis* with his company departed, not discovering whom they were. And what happened to him and his Cousin, with the Ladies in the dangerous grove.

The battell resting in this manner as is before recited, very cruell and bloody on all parts, the like whereof to that day was never seen of so few Knights, the one side resolved to effect their enterprize, which by the victory of that battell would be by the Emperours death: grew strength whence none was, judging it better in that fight to do well revenging their own deaths, then to abide the mercy of the Emperour, of whom they none expected. On the other side the Emperours Knights being of such valour as is expressed, and guided by such Captaines fought so courageously with their adversaries, that forcing them to retire
most

most of them left their LIVES in the Field. About this time appeared, along the way from the City so many Squadrons of Knights, that they covered all those fields, keeping no order in their march; Galloping so fast, that quickly they Arrived where that unequal Battell was fighting: who being by the Pagans seen straight, put themselves to flight, thinking to save themselves in the Thickets of the woods. But the Emperours Knights then arriving so suddenly, assaulted them, that having no time to execute their purpose, they were all put to the sword, none surviving to carry news home of their overthrow. The Emperours and Princes remained so wounded, that although the joy of their great victory eased the pains of their wounds, yet thought they could not scape with life, for the quantity of blood issued from them was so great, that the horses were altogether belmeared therewith. But the Emperour, seeing how much bound he was to those Knights, with great gladnesse ran to Don Bellianis, whom he so much prized for his haughty Chivalry, that he judged all others in comparison of his, but a dream. The Prince Don Bellianis did the like; and going to dismount on foot, to shew his humble duty, the Emperour would not permit it, but holding him in his arms said.

If (most excellent Knight) you regard what you have done for me, and from what great dangers you and your companie have delivered me, more reason were, if I should kisse your hand, in sign of acknowledging the great benefit that by your magnanimity I have received, which no lesse then with my life I should remunerate in satisfaction whereof, I pray the Almighty Lord that hath delivered us from so great danger and perill to guerdon you for it: for if I should invest you Lord of all my Empire, you could not rest satisfied for the least part of your deserved merits this day obtained. Wherefore, henceforth I will hold this Monarchy, not as absolute commander thereof, but as given me by your hands, and as your deputy to keep it, acknowledging my lawfull homage for the same, at all times when you shall command.

The Prince Arfileo coming thither at that instant, not letting Don Bellianis answer the Emperour least thereby he might be known, being loath to discover themselves, by reason

of their promise made to the Danieles has replied. What to say this knight hath in your service done (most mighty Emperour) deserbeth no recompence, nor yet those so ceremonious thanks, for more than this; every one knowing the Royalty of your person is bound unto, and now we resting more then satisfied with the good will in here with you seem to accept this our small service, and having no more need of us at this present, we instantly beseech you to grant us leave, that sending for our Danieles we may hence depart, for our abiding here may be very dangerous unto us. To which a Don of the Empire

At very dead (addressing us Knight) I tell you (replied the Emperour) there is now a great battell repelented me, then the last: For I cannot believe in knights so magnanimous in herofall deeds, there should be such discourtesie, as to depart leaving on me the burthen of ingratitude, in making me suffer you to go so grievously wounded, when your deserts merit much satisfaction, and that which most tormenteth me, is you should desire to depart, not revealing unto me your names, that at least I might know to whom my thanks are due. And you most excellent knight (turning to Don Bellianis) do I intreat to do it, which if you also deny me, I here protest to follow you about the world till I learn it, and joining it to the enterprize I have undertaken in demand of my Son Don Bellianis, and of his cousin Arfileo, I will not returne to Constantinople, till I also know this I now request of you.

Don Bellianis fearing to be known, altered his speech, and answered: I cannot but confess the high discourtesie that we commit (most glorious Emperour) in disobeying the supream command of so great a Monarch, whose immortall fame deserbeth the whole earths (and chiefly ours) obedience. But men being subject, voluntarily to promise, and tied by necessity to obedience, forceth us by disobeying you, to observe our surpassed word to one of the Ladies that be within the Castle; which was not to discover our selves to any, until we were out of the Empire, least thereby we should be detained. And as for the demand you undertake of the Princes your Son and Cousin you may account it ended, for they be living, and not long ago were before this Castle, whom I and this my companion have seen toge-

together; and thus we assure you to be true, because we know them very well, and also they told us how being on hunting, they were by a certain adventure parted from you and your train in the dangerous woods, which is far from hence. Wherefore in lieu of this promise and oath, we intreat you any longer not to stay us, nor further to enquire of our affairs, nor names, seeing it lieth not in our powers to detain them.

The Emperour being about to reply, the King of Hungarie came to them, that returned from pursuing his enemies, to whom the Emperour said: it becometh your King of Hungary to constrain these knights to abide with us; for I cannot entreat it: They will not do so I am sure (answered the King) especially at your request. I say I cannot obtain it, said the Emperour; yet have the told me newes of my son and yours, and that it is not long since they departed away from them, and so all this while they not tell me their names. They are altogether so unworthy to be known, said Arfileo, that it is unnecessary to require them. But if it my please your Majesty we would gladly know the cause wherefore these knights would have slain you, though in the beginning me thought they meant it by us.

The Emperour thereupon told them the whole occasion, as is already mentioned, at which instant the Princesse Aurora coming thither with her Ladies, and hearing the Emperour name Don Gallanero, said to Don Bellianis. The greatest part of our enterprise (Sir Knight) were finished, if the traitor were taken, whereupon they commanded him to be sought for about the field but could not find him, yet in the search they met the man that directed Don Gales to the sea coast: of whom by the signes and tokens of their armour, they learned that they had fled from the battell whereof the Emperour was exceedingly sorry, to whom Don Bellianis thus spake. Alas! not your self (blessed Lord) about him, for it is the enterprise I undergo by this Ladies command, and it will be I protest and promise you that the first time he falls into my hands (though it be before the God save his Lord) I to give him his death, I would not have you take such pains (said the Emperour) but over passing that, let me again intreat you to stay the curing of your wounds in this Castle. We may here abide no longer (replied Don Bellianis)

nis) and so taking their leaues, (the Prince lending for his shield, which was brought him in two pieces) they straight departed, so sorely wounded as may be imagined; for he that had least of them both, had above twenty very dangerous wounds, chiefly that which Arileo had on his thighe, and the thrust that Don Bellianis had, which seemed to penetrate his entralls. In this manner going on their way the space of three miles, ascended a high mountain, to find some place to dresse their wounds, and having cut and gathered a great number of branches and boughs the damfels made some arbours for the knights, having left behind the two old men, with many others: for seeing them fall from their horses, supposed them slain in the fight, and with their Cloaks, Towels and Scarfes covered them, and after they had unarmed them, with such things as they had, dressed their wounds: which were so deep and dangerous, that they greatly lamented, certainly thinking that they could not scape Death. And leaving them alone to repose their wearied bodies, told it their Maide, who bitterly wept for their perill, as if she had seen them dead, so much she credited her Damfels words, knowing their skill in that mystery to be singular. But being thus in their laments, they saw a charriot coming through the air, which seemed to be made of white transparent Christall of the mount: it was drawn with sixty ugly Giffons, that put the Princesse and her Ladies in great fear, which Chariot alighted in the place where the knights lay. From it descended two very little dwarffes, that were going to the Prince Don Bellianis with a cheerful voice, and said: We are messengers sent from the wise Bellona, who for great Love she beareth you, and the Prince your cousin, knowing in what danger your lives be in, and how nigh death approacheth, to craue your tributary duty, by reason of your great wounds (for although these Ladies be very skillfull in this art, yet you cannot without great danger be cured, unless it be by her, and also because the Emperours men are seeking for you, and will not be long ere they come hither, she hath sent you this Carre, in which requires you, that without longer delay, both you with the Princesse and her Ladies, mount speedily thereon, for that the Emperour hath straight need of the self same remedy, and in dalliance he may incurre much perill

of

his Life. Whereupon they seeing that more then the present danger could not happen unto them, agreed thereto, and taking the Princesse and her Ladies, they all mounted on the Chariot, though the Ladies with some fear did it. But ere we more speak of them, we must remember what befell the Emperour, at the battel was ended.

CHAP. IX.

What the Emperour did after the Princes departure, how he knew how they went.

Done after the Emperour saw the adventure ended to his high honour, he rendered immortal thanks to the Almighty for his deliv'ry, and with the news he had of his dear Sonne and Cousin, nothing regarded his wounds, whereupon the King of Hungaria said: have a care O great Sovereigne to cure your wounds, if you will enjoy the victory you have atchieved, for it will be no small thing to escape with Life being so pitcously wounded. My joy is so great, answered the Emperour, that were it not moderated with seeing these knights go with so dangerous wounds, in my defence and liberty from this days perill, that onely were a sufficient remedy to heal me without further cure. But believe me: (if as I hope) I do escape this danger, recovering my almost lost life, I will not desist till by some means I know who, and whence they be, that so well revenged me: and commanding all the wounded to be conveyed to the City, he returned to the Castle, leaving the King of Hungaria to make provision of all necessaries, and himself was laid in his bed: where his wounds being dressed, his Surgeons thought it impossible he should without great hazard of his Life escape them.

Whereat the people sorely grieved, chiefly feeling that a while after he was dressed, through the intolerable pain of the wound in his head, he spake many things without reason, as a man distracted of sence, and half Lunatick, which was judged as tokens of his death, so that none dared to carry any such things to Constantinople. But thus fearing his untimely end, there came a damsel to the King of Hungary, that having caused the wounded knights to be conducted to be cured, rested greatly discontent

for the Emperours danger; and with a merry semblance said to him, Do not grieve most noble King; for the boat is not come, that so royal and most glorious a Prince should thus suddenly leave the world; therefore lead me straight into his presence, and you shall see wonders by me wrought. The amazed King replying never a word, took her by the hand, and brought her to the Castle, and set her in the chamber, where the Emperour lay in the state afore recited; more like a dead then a living creature. The damfels in the entering drew forth of a little Box certaine Ointments that she brought with her, wherewith the Emperour lying in a trance receiued his vitall senses; and with a faint voyce, said. O mighty Saviour of the world, I do beseech thee, if so it may please thy high omnipotency, not to take this transitory life from me, before I have seen my dear, dear Son, that in the end of my pilgrimage, I may with comfort die. Thou shalt not yet die (said the Damzell) therefore strengthen your self, for you shall ere you die; faster many perills, byained by the divine power of the highest Lord. And if your heart will serue to drinke this potion I bring, you shall presently be restored to your former health: and fear not to drinke it, for I am come from those knights that aided you. So drawing forth a little glass, wherein was a certain composition so odoriferous, that the Emperour and all that were present, were glady comforted with the smell, the Emperour taking it in his hand, fearlesly drank it off. And at that instant he felt himself so well, as he had neuer been wounded, or ill at all. And rising to thank her, she went the way she came, and commaunded the King of Hungary to kin her, who answered at the Emperours sudden recovery, knew not were he slept or waked: but following her, she stayed him and said, Wee not your self (renowned King of Hungary) in so kinning me. But know thou, the Emperour was aided by the nearest kinman he and you haue, wherewith the hang away so quickly, that we seem'd to outstrip the wind, and suddenly banished out of sight.

And here the Bishop declared this was the sage Bellona, who greatly tendering the love of Don Bellianis, did for his sake to cure the Emperour, so otherwise his death had ben sureer then his life. The King of Hungary amazed with these things,

as

The Honour of Chivalry.

45

as also (knowing in what danger the Emperour had been in) to see him now come forth of his chamber, demanded him what was become of the Lady: To whom he told all that had passed, and what she said.

I cannot think then (replied the Emperour) whom those so valiant Knights may be, having my self Knighted them. Trust me (not answered the King) if they were not our lost Sons, for we have no higher gentlemen, and your knighting them assureth it to be true, as also the names themselves told you. Who can helpe he, said the Emperour, if they were them, they would so depart from me: wherefore I will have all these men separate themselves, to seek them about the Forrest; for being wounded they cannot be far gone, and somewhere they may be alighted to bind their wounds. So commanding all the knights to doe it, they went to visit the Prince Don Brianell, having heard he was in no lesse danger then the Emperour; and going into his chamber, they neither found him nor sign of him, but upon his beds head they found a letter written in Greek to this effect.

This is meant by the Prophecy in the 2. Book and 7. Chapter.

In the time to come that the brave Lyon of the house of Grecia shall be put in greater danger by the unknown Lyon, defender of his Royall blood, shall also by the orient hearts, through the means of their unjust Prince, be put in greater peril then the last, whereof by him he was delivered, wherein all the power of my knowledge shall be tryed, the most part of them being absent. And thou great Emperour that this readest, desist from the demand of thy Son and Knights, and by no means put thy self in their quest, for thy Empery will greatly need thee (though not so soon.) This I write thee, that thou mayst know the fame of thy glorious deeds will be extinguished by the light of the new Knight to thy greater eternity. Therefore do no otherwise then this my Letter requireth thee, for I wish all thine affairs may succeed according to thy own desires, which good will the present remedy thou didst receive by my Damzel well doth approve.

The Emperour having read the Letter, rested greatly confused.

lused therewith, and turning to the King, said, What thinke
 you we may do, concerning this letters command. I thinke (an-
 swered the King) since you know the writers wisdom and zeal
 toward you, you ought to execute the same. Let us await the
 return of our knights, replied the Emperour, and then we will
 depart, for I greatly desire to have them Emperresses these news:
 and looking out of a window of the Castle, they saw comming
 from the City great multitudes of knights, seeming aboue 30000.
 What shall we doe, said the Emperour if we should have a
 greater conflict then that which is past. I thinke those be your
 ensignes (replied the King) and looking more earnestly toward
 them, perceived plainly they were the same. For when it was
 brated about the City, (not knowing the number of assailents
 that had beset the Emperour) all the Knights there, with Cit-
 izens, Souldiers, and their leaders, armed themselves and came
 to rescue their Emperour. With them came the old Prince
 of Macedon, then arrived in the City, and also the Emperresse
 Clarinda, that would by no means stay, though by the way she
 understood the whole successe of the Fight, but would go to vi-
 sit the Emperour, who then Descended to receive them: to
 whom the Leaders, and the rest humbled themselves, with un-
 speakable joy to see him safe. And when he knew the Emperress
 was there without farther stay went to her, where she was, to
 recount their glad grætings. What hath become of you (my
 most dear Lord) (said the Emperresse) for I perceiue you have
 not been at no great pastime, so many fuggard knights lying in
 field, for all I see your person woundlesse: and tell me where
 is the Prince Don Brianell. Things have befallen me (answe-
 red he) that requireth long time to dilate, Wherefor alight and
 wel enter the Castle where I will tell you all. So while they
 were at supper, the Knights Iousted and tilted about the field
 one with another, for joy of the Emperours safety; and the Ta-
 bles being taken up, after some discourse, the Emperresse under-
 standing their succels with the damsels, and how they thought
 that those Knights were Don Bellianis and Arfileo, she scarce
 could containe her self with joy, though somewhat moderated
 it with fear of their great and dangerous wounds. May it not
 by some meanes be known (said she) if they were them: We
know

know no more (replied the King of Hungary) then what is said. But the Emperoz remembring the two old knights, that with them came, and seeing at their departure they went not with them, said to the King say you not when you remained to see the wounded cured, among them two old knights; They be in this other lodging, said the King and because they were so grievously wounded, I durst not send them to Constantinople. Let us go visit them (said the Emperesse) and so went to their chambers, whom they found in great pain by reason of their wounds; to whom the Emperesse thus spake: how feel you your selves, good Knights fear not, for you be in place, where you shall well be lookt to, and shall want nothing needfull for your health. They in their pain, thinking her to be their Lady (answered) we are not so sorry for our wounds, as that we think Don Belianis slaine, and you and we imprisoned, for of the battel with his father he had, he and his Cousin with the other knight rested wonderously wounded, and after so many assailling them, we cannot choose but judge them dead; yet since we see you at liberty, we beseech you tell us the successe of the same Fight, and how the Princes remained, it being ended. The Emperesse with great joy perceiving by these words, that the Knights which so valiantly behaved themselves in the battell where the Princes, her Son and Cousin. And turning to the Emperoz said. What say you now Sir; is not the King of Hungaries suspicion well verified: The Emperoz with wonderful gladnesse straight went to the Field, where his Knights were with many Dukes, and great Lords, and meeting with the Duke of Trebento, delivered unto him those good newes; wherupon it was presently spread among all the people, how the Knight that had performed such deeds of Chivalry in the battel, was their Prince; and his companion was the Prince Arfileo his Cousin: whose unspeakable joy for these newes, cannot sufficiently be expressed, greatly praising God that had so magnanimous a Prince to govern them after his Father. The Emperesse that remained with the old Knights, desirous to know more of them, discovered her selfe, though against her will, and said. I am not she, good knights, whom peradventure you take me for, and therefore I pray you tell me what fortune conducted me hither:

The Knights then recovering their senses, were very sorry the
 was not their Princess with whom they had spoken, and lament-
 ing not to mark her, made no answer, but began to groane as
 through pain of their wounds. The Emperesse leading them,
 went out of the Chamber, and commanded them to be againe
 dressed, continuing there with the Emperoz six dayes, in which
 time, the two Knights were greatly amended of their wounds,
 of whom they knew the whole truth of the adventure which
 Don Bellianis had overtaken; of which the Emperoz was ex-
 treamly glad, determining to aid them with men sufficient for
 such an enterprise. So he and all the rest departed to Constan-
 tinople, where many fine officers triumphs, and games were or-
 dained, then the Emperoz knighted 2 of the Duke of Trebento
 his sons, that in those games, won great honour, the one called
 Don Gildrell of the Rose, the other Don Sabian of Trebento,
 whose notable deeds shall be at large declared: and another, the
 son of the Duke of Pontus, named Don Persiano the courteous,
 and also the King of Argos, son by name Don Bryamore, with
 many more, all which departed to seek Don Bellianis, thinking
 to find him at Antioch changing their upper garments, and ar-
 mours, according the Moriscoes: in which journey we leave them,
 and the Emperoz that minded to send thither a great host of men,
 and go himself in person, and now must we turn our course to
 Don Bellianis, chiefe subject of our labors, whom with his com-
 pany, we left in the Chyrtaine carres, drawn through the ayre
 by the enchanted Griffons, as heretofore is mentioned.

CHAP. X.

What happned to the Prince drawne in the Griffons Charret.

How they were cured of their wounds by the sage Beltona:
 and after, how they all departed toward Antioch.

DON Bellianis and Arfileo, having mounted the Chariot,
 guided by the Divarques, with the Princess and her Dam-
 selfs, as before is recited, not knowing whether they might be
 conducted, were so swiftly drawn by the Griffons, that in very
 short time they were within the Kingdome of Persia: not far
 from the great citie of Persepolis, and on the desolatest moun-
 taines of all that land, the Griffons descended, hard by the
 mouth of a dark and obscure cave, from whence came forth an
 old

old woman, above two hundred years of age who coming before the meane and saint Princes; knelled to them, desiring that she might kisse their hands. But when she would rise, she was straight known of the Princesse, who greatly joying with her sight, embracing her, accounting her no lesse then if she were her own mother; and turning to Don Bellianis said, now with our affairs most excellent Prince happily proceed, for I tell you this is the sage Bellona, that hath brought us hither by this means, so that now I have utterly exiled the fear I conceived of your wounds. The Prince seeing her so nigh him, very lovingly embraced her: the like did Don Arfileo, to whom the old woman spake. Let me intreate you my good Lord to alight, that with diligence your wounds may be cured, together with the other Knight your champion, whom I have within this cave, that with no lesse necessity then your selves I have hitherto brought. The Prince recording the Edwards words when he mounted the chariot, demanded whether it was the Emperors his father. So my good Lord (said she) for there is no reason that in so perilous a time he should leaue his Empire your self being absent: but it is the Prince Don Brianel of Macedon. Then tell me (said Don Bellianis) how remaineth the Emperour my father, well, lusty, and merry (replied she) for he hath learned who you were, that in the battell aided him. But how came he to know it, demanded Arfileo: whereupon she told them how. I am sorry for it (said Don Bellianis) for they will condemne us of discourtesie. What is no matter (replied she) besides they will not take it in ill part, knowing you did it to obserue your word. I pray you (said he) how was my father so soon healed, for unless I be deceiued, he was grievously wounded: so straight shall you know it (said she) and leading them through the Cave, she brought them to a pallace, which they iudged to be the stables that they ever saw, where with the help of many of the sages Seruants, they alimounted, with whose diligent service they rested much contented, and being laid on rich beds, the grave Physician said to them having searched their wounds, I could at once cure your wounds, as I do the Emperours, and Don Brianel, but so it not because I will keepe you here a few dayes: and assure your selves you shall be straight out of all danger. And then

she applies such Ointments, whereby they felt themselves
 greatly comforted & eased, as if they had no pain at all. Don Bel-
 lianis intreated her that they might see the prince Don Brianell.
 You shall (said she), but first rest a while, for you have thereof
 great need: and commanding the windows to be shut, took the
 Princess by the hand, and leaving the knights led her through a
 long gallery, not far from thence that reached to another lodging
 of the same, making that Don Bellianis was in, so curiously
 wrought, and of so rare workmanship that 5 Ladies greatly ad-
 mired it: entering into another room, they found the prince Don
 Brianell walking alone, already healed of his wounds yet having
 lost much blood, he looked very pale and wan: for the sage Patron
 greatly commiserating his danger, provided as heretofore is spe-
 cified. For when she went to cure the Emperour, she made one of
 her damfels to enter another way unseen, and fetching him thence,
 brought him thither in a trance, and for all he was healed with
 the dyink that Bellona gave him, yet knew he not in what place,
 or in whose power he was, neither knew he whether he was in
 prison or at liberty, nor in what state the battell remained, in
 which he left the Emperour: and seeing his wounds whole, was in
 such wonder, that almost perswaded himself, waking out of a
 dream, and seeing no body with whom he might speak, walking
 up and down the Chamber, seeking and observing how by some
 means he might resolve his confused thoughts: and when he saw
 5 Princesses Aurora and her damfels, with the old woman leading
 her by the hand, he straight knew her garments, for as is said
 he saw her before he and Arsileo had begun their combat: with
 whose sight he thought that he and the Emperour were imprison-
 ned by the knights with whom they had commenced their bat-
 tell, and yet knew he not how that might be, having after seen
 them aided by the Emperour against Don Gallaneo's knights:
 but seeing them so nigh him, thought that though he were in the
 prison (as he imagined) yet ought he use that behaviour that his
 state required, and seeing they were Ladies, approached with
 that courtesie which might beseech one accompanied with such
 knights. And she having learned of the old woman who he
 was, humbled her self at his feet: which he unable to disturb, did
 the like, desiring her to grant him her safe hands that he might
 kiss.

Rise them: but they so long strived to surpass each other in
 contests: but Bellona committeth them to rise, for their state
 so; had such ceremonies between them: which they did, though
 not so free as at first, for they rested greatly affectionate either
 of other, and Don Brianell at last thus brake silence. I doe so
 wonder at the marvellous things that since yesterday have hap-
 pened me, that I know not if any such have been or no, for being
 with the Emperour my Sovereigne in battell, wherein I re-
 mained sore wounded, and not knowing the end thereof, I find
 my selfe at this present well and strong, and in this rich and
 sumptuous Chamber, with whose like the whole world cannot
 compare nor yet know whether I be at liberty or captive, though
 under the power of such keepers, I should imagine such rest raist
 a greater comfort to my grief, then any I can desire. Where-
 fore excellent Lady, I intreate you, if you be in the same case
 that I am in (as one that I suppose was present at all that be-
 fell) you would declare it me, and that I may also with your
 favour know the true successe of the battell, and what is be-
 come of the most haughty Knights that accompanied you, whose
 mighty strength I am sure the whole earth cannot equal, and
 for what cause I am here kept, whether with or without your
 will? Whilste he uttered these words, the Princess earnestly
 blessed him, and remained so greatly satisfied with his good dis-
 position (being a very gallant Knight) and seeing reason willed
 her to answer all his demands, thus replied. Not without cause
 may you be confounded in your imaginations (excellent Prince)
 for I assure you, if now you enjoy your life, it is by your being
 here: and though the battell was fought nigh Constantinople, at
 this instant you are not so near it, as to the Rhiphean mountains,
 joining upon the great city of Persepolis, for all which you may
 thank this grabe Patron: here is with me, seeing by her great
 knowledge you hither were conducted. The Knights with whom
 you in the beginning combated and came in my company, are the
 Prince Ariles that with you fought, the other, whose battell was
 with the Emperour, is his Son Don Bellianis. As it possible:
 Oh God saith Don Brianell, that Don Bellianis should with such
 glory principate his haughty deeds of Chivalry. Account these
 the least (saith Bellona) for I tell you neither the Emperour
 his

his father, nor any knight this day living, may with him compare. Certainly I thinke no less (replyed Don Brianel) and were they you say dare I belicue of that couragious Prince, hauing seen him performe such surpassing wonders in that one fight. But I beseech you let me know the end thereof, and how the Emperour and he do. The Emperour is well (said she) and the Princes both be in this House where you are, though some wounded. Now I assure you, answered Don Brianel, I account my self most happy, that after so many troubles I hear the most contented news that my perplexed soule could wish, after the tempestuous passage of a boystrous storm, with the calm approach of the all-comforting sunne. Wherefore let us without longer stay go visit them, and there may I know what else happened in this adventure. When when you please (said Don Bellona) for I know they will no lesse joy with your sight then you with theirs. So taking him betwixt them, they returned the way they came to the chamber, where they left the Princes and entering it, they found them talking together of their last adventure. But when the Princes saw Don Brianel they would rise to reverence him, but he turning to Don Bellianis bowed low, bended his knee to the ground, craving he might kiss his hands. The Prince took him up, and embracing so hold him, while and said, I do greatly rejoyce, renowned Prince, to see you so well, though according to your great deeds in the battell whereby you got many dangerous wounds, I thought we should not so long see you, for which let us thank this Lady that comes with you, seeing she took such care of your safety, which with all our states we cannot sufficiently recompence, having (next unto God) by her means recovered his lost times. Wherefore I thinke it reason (said Don Brianel) seeing she was the instrumentall cause we repossess them, we in her service to the death use them, that at least thereby we may seem to satisfie some parts of her many deserts, and so intreat her to command them as her givn, whereunto she thus answered. It sufficeth me great Lords, to have done some service to such Princes, which doth surpass all satisfaction whatsoever. I may of you receive: how much the more, that will not be so little which you must undertake, in behalf of this disinherited Prince my Cousin, where with this resteth fully

fully recompensed, which they again replied with great courtesie: and then Don Brimel went to Arles: embracing him said,

We now have time noble Prince to know the cause & moved you without my leave to enter in this place, I am not so weary of the last demand (replied he) but that I may satisfie you now in this, though your self be well, and that the last adventure cost so dear, it were no reason to leave you in this unsatisfied.

In these and such like speeches continued they till supper time: which come, they all did eat together, because of the wounded Prince. Here stayed they fifteen dayes till the Prince were well able to travel: in which time and day, Bellona taking Don Bellianis a part, she said unto him walking through those rooms. I do well know most excellent Prince, and so judge myself altogether unworthy, and it not necessary to give you counsel concerning your great actions, yet because you are a stranger in an unknown Countrey, and in a place where every one would wish your downfall with extreame death, and so many needful advertisements I presume to tell you, that though faithfully in heart, and with good reason, you observe, and unsainely keep, the law and religion of your profession, yet must you conceal it by no means manifest it, for it in the least respect you do, it may cost you your dearest life. And moreover, after that by your victorious arm you have safely established the Princesse Aurora in her usurped royalties, you must procure and endeavor to arrive at the Palace of Babylons Court, where that must withstand your never fainting heart, with your accustomed courage: for you shall there see your self in so many great perils that you shall a thousand times wish for death, as a remedy for them. But heresof take no thought, for they are things ordained by the Supreme power, yet alwayes bear on your shield the same device that you now have, though for her sake you shall be put in great, and fierce many and tedious passions, yet shall you be thereby known, and your immortal fame blazed over the whole world: content, which you shall still wear till I shall advertise you to the contrary: Where with she ended, and the Prince thus replied, I will not render to you such thanks, as this care and great courtesies deserve, for every thing I possess being at your command, it is reason you guard and protect them as your own.

Here with

Herewith they returned to their company, and Don Brianell having seen them both together, said, I would not have you be so long together, neither that you should learn any thing, whereby you might further excell us in fight, which if it be so, it were no reason that I whose merits be so inferiour to yours, should learn them. You may well do it (replied Don Bellianis) having in the last conflict reaped the profit, fearlessse of any thing that might have happened unto us. In all things you will seem to yield unto me the vantage, answered Don Brianell, though there be nothing in me that may any way please you or the Prince Arfileo, since as you shew, you would have me had that carefull fear of you, as well not knowing as knowing you, yet do not I know why I should fear you, being accompanied with the divine beauty of this most fair and excellent Princeesse. You do well to jest with us all, (replied she) yet 'tis no matter since your words expresse what small part I have thereof, having been unable to expell the doubt you had of the Princes being here.

Don Brianell being of nature courteous and pleasant, kept them in pleasing chat, the rest of the time of their being there, which was some eight dayes; which expired, they being desirous to depart thence, had an Armour presented to each of them by Bellona, the richest and fairest that ever was seen: that which Don Bellianis had was of a Tawny colour, with such naturall works, embossed with pearls so bright, that they yielded as much light as Ten burning Torches in any dark place, but chiefly the shield, having the very same image it had befoze, which was drawn with such curiosity of art, that if they had ever seen the substance, they would have judged it the counterfeist or portraiture of Florisbella, the Soldan of Babylons Daughter: which although the Princeesse Aurora knew, yet said nothing, imagining the wise woman had not without speciall cause set it there. About it was written the aforesaid Motto, so perfectly made with great Orient pearls, that it forced admiration in each beholder. He had also a Scabbard given him for his Sword, made of a masse Gold, with Letters drawn thereon, declaring the manner of winning thereof, Arfileos were like them he had in the Cave: and Don Brianells were of divers colours, whose

workmanship was worth a great Treasury. Did not I say, I should in all things have the advantage, that for a white Armour of no value, which I did wear in the battell, have given me now so rich and faire: It is not given you as a gift for your old (said Arileo) but that you should pay for them. Use not the office of a Merchant (replied Don Brianell) for who hath given me my armour useth not to sell any. If it be so (said Arileo) how payed you for that which you wear. Strive not about so small a matter (said Don Bellianis) for I will pay for all, having greatest cause for it. Then straight were they with them armed: and taking leave of the sage Patron; he said. You will by the way need Pages to attend you, therefore will I give you three of mine, and so presented them three Dwarfes, so little, that they greatly delighted to see their smallnesse, especially that of Don Bellianis, whose shortnesse reached not to the others middle, though they were wonderful low. Where inhabit, and are ingendred such gentle people as these; said Don Brianell, I should remaine among them if I should stay there to be accounted nothing, as every one of them is elsewhere. You shall not be accounted nothing (said Don Bellianis dwarf, called Ordino) for they would all so persecute you, that seeing your business to theirs, they would (wanting ground) tread on you in stead of it. That were worse then the other (replied Don Brianell,) But least we further proceed in talke, it were good we set forward in our journey; Therewith, with most kind courtesie, taking their farewell of the Lady of the Cave, set forth of the same. And being without, hee seeing the Princessesse and Lady all cloathed in most rich cloath of Gold, said with great laughter: Let us (Sirs) make more hast, for the destruction that these Damselfs have made, will cause some unsean wanderer demand it at our hands. But all that is left is yours (said the Princessesse) therefore fear not. If it be so (replied he) I have no lesse right to that which you carry: therefore were it not amisse you give it me. The Prince Don Bellianis will not suffer it (answered he) he being my guardian. For so much as concerneth me (said the Prince) I will defend you against all the world. That's not materiall (quoth Don Brianell) for on my side I have the Prince Arileo, that will suffer none wronged

wronged in his pretence. I cannot help you in this demand (said he) least I should incurre such punishment, as to my ill satisfaction, and lesse reason I should defend.

CHAP. XI.

What hapned Don Bellianis, and his companions, with Duke Alfiron the courteous, and how they proved the adventure of the unhappy bridge.

In this order Travelled these Princes with as much pleasure as their young years could require, fearing nothing that might annoy them, taking their straight way towards a Castle, some three miles distant from Antioch, for the Princesse told them it was a strong Fortresse, and never won by any Forraign foer, and that she and her Damselfs would there remain, where also they might determine of their affaires. For which cause they had a man to guide them thither, whom they receiued of Bellonia, which way they had not far gone, but by the same they saw toward them come the number of Twenty Thousand Knights, whereof the greatest part were very sumptuously apparalled, and many clad with rich and bright armor, insomuch that the Prince and his companions took great delight in seeing them, and Don Bellianis stepping to one of the foremost, that greatly admired him being so bravely armed, and one so mighty a courser mounted, and demanded thus. I pray you in courtesie tell me, Sir Knight, to whom belongeth this fair company of Knights: he should be of no small account, that such a train maintains. They belong (Sir Knight answered he) unto Duke Alfiron the courteous, that now goeth to the City of Persepolis, because the great Sophy hath obtained great triumphs and conquests, whereunto he hath invited all the nobility of his Empire. Why prepares he to great feasts: demanded the Prince. Haply sir (replied the other) not long since he promised to give one only daughter that he hath, to what Knight soever should slay the Emperour of Greece, or take him prisoner: which enterprize the Prince Don Gallaneo of Antioch undertook, accompanied with many knights, who is now returned with one Cousin of his, by whom and others that with them came, the Sophy is certified, how they left the Emperour so wounded, that they could by no means scape. For which cause he hath determined to give him his Daughter

in marriage, and therefore in these triumphs doth he least all his Nobles. But demanded Don Bellianis why doth the Sophi so, being uncertain of the truth? He thinks this sufficient answered the Knight) that if it should otherwise be, it is thought impossible ever to affect it, for the Emperour being thereof forewarned, will with greater regard look to himself: and besides, his Daughter will not be evill matched, he being one of the best Knights in the land. Though (to tell you truly) we be not well contented with this marriage, for that the Duke our Master was first greatly favoured of the Princesse Persiana (for so is the Sophys daughter called) and seeing now he will marry her to Don Gallaneo, he goeth very passionate.

I commit you to God (said Don Bellianis) for you have much pleased me with your discourse helmes: and turning to the Prince and his Companions, told them all his talk with the Knight, and demanded of them if they thought good to see those Tounts at Persepolis ere they passed forwarder. It will be well done (said Don Brianel) yet how shall we do, being unprovided of a Tent? What need you care for that (answered Arisles) for it may be some will entertain us; not we must lie in the fields. And thus unresolved, stood still till that troupe past along. At which time some of them went to the Duke, that at that time was very pensively imagining on the Princesse Persiana, and said to him, See you not (said) wonder these knights armed with the richest armor you have this day seen, whose gallant disposition cannot but content you, and stand in the midst of the war, seeming to demand the breaking of some Lances, and doe also conduct with them about twelve Damselfs, as it seems no lesse adjoynd with beauty, then they with valor. The Duke being desirous to see them, stepped forth, being armed in a tawny armor like Don Bellianis, and over the same he had a coat of a cloath of Gold, most richly embroidered with Pearls, whose brightness being overcast with the beams of the shining sun, dazzled the beholders sight. On his shield was pictured the God of Love, of whom a Knight begged mercy, he rigorously denyed it. And thus went he straight to the Princes, while they gazed on him, going like a valorous and well disposed Knight. The Duke no lesse wondering to see their gallant demeanour, and riches of ar-

more especially Don Bellianis, whose sight surprized him with sudden admiration; and being nigh them he kindly saluted them being of nature mild, gentle and affable, for which he had obtained the name of courteous, and thus said, I am so astonished by these and valiant knights in seeing the brave disposition of your person, and strange manner of travelling that I have received such content, as the like I shall never obtain chiefly at this time, being subject to a grievous melancholy grief. And because I suppose ye are going to the triumph at Persepolis, I intreate you to employ me in this journey, for that you seem strangers of some remote Countrey.

And though the valour of our own persons may merit farre greater service, yet I pray deny me not this request: for I hope herein to diminish part of my boisterous and troublesome sorrow: with your gentle conversation. The Princes intreating one another to answer Don Bellianis, at last replied. The offers (most noble Duke) which by your liberal bounty we receive, are so great as we (being no other then errand knights) can no way deserue. And though we had not determined to be at those triumphs: yet to accomplish your request, willingly do condescend thereto, yielding the accountless thanks of dutifull seruitors at your command; for which the Duke very joyfully entertained them, with his Ladies in his own company, and so made to Persepolis, discoursing by the way of pleasant matters, till they came within a mile of the City, hard by a great river, over which they must of necessity pass by a bridge that there was. Which the Duke seeing, said confounded in our own discourses, six knights, we have lost our way. Don Bellianis seeing the City, and not knowing to what end the Duke spoke it, replied. If that be the City, I think this is the right way. Als, answered the Duke. But we may not passe this bridge for it will be mightily defended. Who be they (demanded he) that will defend it against such knights as be with us? They that do it will defend it against the whole world (answered the Duke.) For in this Kingdome are four knights, the valiantest that on the earth doe breath all brothers. Which in one battel the Soldan had against the Soldan of Babylon, performed in it such mighty deeds, that by their proper valour the victory was obtained, which got them such honour

honour, that till this day, they are reputed the strongest knights that may be found. Whereupon the Sophy to honour them, bad them demand what they would, and he would grant it. They answered they would have nothing but this Castle and the Bridge, that no knights might go that way, unless he should leave his armor and horse, or overcoming them all in fight, pass by. The Sophy granted it with a great living besides to maintain their states.

So they being come to this Bridge, have brought with them two mighty and strong Gyants, whose fierceness no hundred knights dare abide in combat together. And have above three years defended this passage, & not any knight hitherto hath vanquished them. For though they be strong and valiant, yet in their combat they proceed not like good knights: for if it hapneth that any knight overthroweth any of them, he must fight with the others, till he overthrow them all: but if he be by any blow himself overthrown, he straight looseth his arms. And if he should overthrow them all, he must after combat with all six together, being the unreasonablest thing that ever was heard of. And this is the cause why this bridge and way is no more used, by reason of the many days that there befalls to wounding knights: and therefore is called the Unhappy bridge. The princes greatly wondered at this adventure, yet having great desire to prove it. Don Bellianis thus said. Truly most honorable Lord, I never heard of the like adventure: but if it so please you, we will try the chance of blind fortune therein. So will it be rather judged madness than valour (replies the Duke). For it lieth not in the compass of one mans strength to vanquish them: for the fear of them is able to withstand the famous Champions of Constantinople: that is the mightiest leader in this part: whose sole mind makes the Soliman himself tremble when he hears him: who also can oppose and withstand the strength of our Prince: that is no less famous than he. Wherefore it is not think good, let us leave this way: for I perceive some of our company do strive to be dangerous, & to do a perpetual ill to one another. (replied Don Bellianis). I thought that we should have adventure out persons here. Wherefore I command them to stay: for I will not hence, leaving this unattempted. While they were thus

talking, they saw on the other side of the bridge, a great number of Knights and Ladies clothed in triumphant robes, they were coming thither to sport themselves. What fair assembly is yonder (said Don Bellianis.) It may be (said the Duke) it is the Sophy, and his Daughter the Princess Persiana, that come to see if there arise any adventurer to the bridge. Although our falls were but to make them sport (said Don Bellianis) we will try our fortunes. Doe as you will (said the Duke) though more willingly I could take another way. Whereupon they went straight forwards that bride, commanded all their Knights to do the like, while they proved the adventure of the Castle, which they did, not with any good will. The Prince Ariled interested Don Bellianis to grant him the first Battell. I will in no wise do it (said he) but hercule Don Gallano is yonder, put on an upper Coate over your Armour, lest you be slain. I will (replied he) but you must grant me this first Combate. In reason it belongs to me (answered Don Bellianis) seeing in this journey I am the conqueror of these Ladies. We have (said Ariled) as long as we can, therefore shall you not so expose yourself. Then let the battel be his (said Don Brianel) whom the Princess shall command. Strive not to do, said the Duke for you shall all have enough to do. Now I pray (said the Princess) Alas! Don Brianel by my sentence demandeth the jug, that the first be his, and the next yours, and the last be his that would be first, having reason that his strength be best tryed when the others fail. Don Bellianis grieved much because he should be last; but seeing he could no other wise be, dissembled it, and stepping to the Duke said, Alas! he too shall have the being free then I thought. The Duke smiled, as one that supposed about labour should be in vain. At length arrived at the bridge, Don Brianel began to be so restless, looking on the other side, all the company came up thither; and stepping thereon, a Knight armed in quarrellous others colours mounted on a mighty horse, approaching nigh him, said, In smel so manye I see : you also what means have to passe this night to take a passage over this bridge by me defended. With mightiness he man the Duke leaped (answered he) yet the utter fall is better of the spoils, did overcome it. In whose name I coming, it will be no great matter for me to abate the swelling pride,

By the speech replied the Knight thou art most Christian.
 That avails not to our purpose (said Don Brianel) therefore
 prepare thy self. The Knight hath great anger (thinking he had
 him in little account) turned his horse, and took so much of the
 bridge as would suffice for his charge, while Don Brianel on the
 line. All the men that came with the Duke, and the people come
 from the City approaching to see the battell, and many said, A
 very fair horse and armour shall the knight give unto him of
 the bridge. At which time the knights having turned their horses, ran one
 against the other, and met so furiously, that the Lances flew in
 pieces, and the Knight of the bridge went to the ground sorely
 pruned, and Don Brianel so much bowes with his horse, that he
 had almost done the like, but seeing what company beheld him,
 raised himself with great courage, considering it was the first
 thing that the Princess had commanded him. A great murmur
 arose among the beholders for they had never seen any of the
 Brethren leave the saddle before. Whereupon the other
 three knights, and the two Gypsies being armed, such a mount-
 ed on great and lusty horses, who when they saw their brother
 on the ground, one of them made towards Don Brianel, already
 had taken a Lance from his Quarrell. The Princess Persiana,
 that was she on the other side of the bridge and Don Gallaneo,
 already called her spouse, with the Sophie his father in law, said
 to Don Gallaneo, I have not seen gallanter Knights then those
 on the farther side, especially you four (pointing to the two Prin-
 ces, the Duke, and he that justed on the bridge) and greatly doe
 desire to know who they be. It is no other then the Duke Al-
 firon (replied Don Gallaneo) for I heard he slept not far hence
 this last night. The Princess Persiana hearing the Duke nam-
 ed, set a deep sigh, as one that loved him within the secret of
 her heart, but for fear to displease her father, durst say nothing,
 yet thought she by the richards of his armour, it should be he, and
 viewed him very attentively, and seeing how the enraged
 Knights with puissant force encountred each other in such sort,
 that the Lances broke in a thousand shivers, and meeting with
 their horses, shields and helmes, both fell to the ground: but if
 Don Brianel's horse had been so good as his adversaries, he had
 passed

passed without a fall, which he had scant done, when the men of the castle closed to unarm him. But the Prince Arfileo desirous to avoid it, with great choller entered the bridge: so did another of the adverse part, with such quickness, as both an arrow shot from a bow, or through the Aire, or a Thunder-bolt breaking from some swelling clowd, and with such might encountered on the bridge, that the knight of the Castle was oerthrowen, with a piers of the lance sticking in his body. If it proceeds as it begins (said the Duke) we shall freely pass. So shall it be (answered Don Bellianis) for with good auspicious favor they may be brought to our wished end. Who Dophy was astonished at the strong encounters of the knight, and speaking to Don Gallaneo, said. I never thought there could be better Knights then those of the bridge, but now I see what advantage these knights have over them. Wonder not therent (said Don Gallaneo) for in the battel we had with the Emperoz, there was in his aid one novell knight, whom he there knighted, that perfozmed such haughty deeds in arms, that neither Hector nor Achilles ever did the like. For believe me he no more esteemed, to be assailed, by four or by two Giants, then with one knight, and with his own hands in the battel he slew above twelve Giants, and fifty knights of mine. But as for the Emperoz, I have told you what happened me with him in the Castle, he being unarmed: so that you need not wonder what these do, though any of them do end this adventure, which I cannot beleve: and if they doe, I will acknowledge it the greatest act that ever I heard of, by reason their sword-fighting will be so unequal. Which having said, the eldest and the greatest of the brethren came against Arfileo, intending to revenge his brothers death, whose encounters were so furious, that their lances were made in little pieces: and in such sort met with their bodies, that the knight of the Castle oerthrowen with a great wound on his side. And Arfileos horse with the strong stroke recoyled back thre or four paces, that at last unable to stay him, with admirable lightnesse, he leapt from his back, being a little wounded on the breast. The servants of the Castle went to him, to doe as they would have done with Don Briamel: but the first that arrived, for his boldnesse, lost his head: For Arfileo thinking he should not be judged

judged overthwart, laid hands on his sword to defend himselfe, whereunto he would have made them know, his valour extend- ed farther then hitherto he had shewn. But the two brothers that Don Brianel had unhorsed arrived with their drawn swords; the like did the Gypsies. And on the other side Don Bellianis and the Duke did so, that in short time among them all, there began a terrible and fearful battle, for all the Dukes Knights would passe over the Bridge. But the Sophy, the Princess Persiana, and Don Gallaneo went and parted them, and demanded the cause why they were so mingled together, and did not proceed with their combat as they had began: which either they should doe or let them passe. We are contented to doe either (said Don Bellianis) but this Knight will not. Seeing by anothers strength he left not the saddle, and therefore ought not to lose his horse until the Jousts be ended. He may no more mount (said they.) Who shall judge it (demanded Don Bellianis?) We need no judge (said they) for it is our custome; but if any must be, let it be the Souldan (our Lord) here present. Be it so, (said the Duke.) Then (said the Sophy) I award, that since the Knight was not by another unhorsed, he lose not his horse nor armour, but that he be vanquished, seeing he sought his horse; so that he may just no more.

Great profit do they get by this sentence (said a proud Knight) that on the Souldan attended, and was a new Adde to the Gypsies that defended the Bridge. It is well judged (said Don Bellianis:) and belovs me, had not the Souldan done it, no lesse wrong received we then they.

But what art thou that shouldst not a little count thy self, being more proud then valiant, to speak against the Souldan thy Lords judgement.

The Knight enraged with desire to revenge those words, answered. Let us set aside the Souldans judgement as a matter impertinent to us: but if thou wilt, upon whether of the knights be overcome, accept this my gage, I give it to thee.

I accept it (answered Don Bellianis) on condition we may not passe the bridge, unless by force we doe it. You defer it too long (said the Knight) and our fight will be told if you mean to win the bridge by strength; for these Knights earnestly desire your

armour, being so rich. But I give thee leave to help them (answered Don Bellianis) whereby thou shalt see how little I account what thou do much esteem.

All the beholders admited him, to see with what courage he spake: but chiefly the Princeesse Persiana that going to the Duke Alifron (whom she did not know) being among the knights, and not knowing what end that enterprize would have did not discover himself, and said, I pray thee (good knight) tell me, who be these knights; for I greatly desire to know it. The Duke softly that, none might hear answered.

No marvel (most tearful Princeesse) and Lady of my heart, you at this time know me not, having employed my service in your behalf to so little regard: But if (dear Lady) you had determined I should live your cruelty die, why did you not command me to be my own Executioner and not permit my eyes to see the sight of my living death? The Princeesse by his speech, straight knew him whereupon, for very grief her eyes overflowed with pearled tears: but dissimbling lest it should be discerned, replied,

The Gods know (great Duke) my grief; for this marriage my Father intended is no less than yours, and therefore must we perforce have patience.

The Duke would have answered her, but that he perceived Don Bellianis has ended the accepting of the battel against the proud knight, and that they of the Bridge had granted them the comba therein, conditionally that if Don Bellianis were overcome, his horse and armor should be theirs: who greatly grieved for their brothers death, and more that they could not be revenged on him that had slain him.

CHAP. XII.

What happened Don Bellianis in the battel with the Knights of the bridge.

DON Bellianis inflamed with anger against the knight, withstood himself, to whom the Princeesse Aurora thus said. As much as other knights, do thou the most dangerous fights, even so much, and more do you seek them. I can do no less (replied he.) At this time arrived the Duke, having left

left the Princess, and said to him; It were good you encourage your self Sir Knight; for you have a very mighty adversary. All his strength will scant suffice him (said the Princess Aurora) though he be never so valiant. All which words the Duke did to little set by as the first, seeing the Knights so well continued them by their naughty Exploits.

Don Bellianis with the enraged choller he had conceived, opposed himself against the Knights that also came towards him, who very strongly in the middle of his Shield made his Encounter, yet not hurting him at all, brake his Lance, not moving him in his saddle; for the impenetrable virtue of the Shield received back the furious Iron.

Don Bellianis with the great desire he had to hit him, with his Encounter, so that their bodies passed on their course with admirable fury. The great ire the Prince hereat conceived by missing his encounter is not described for want of skill but very furiously turned upon the Knight that did the like; and judging it cowardize, having miss'd his Encounter and lost his Lance, to draw his Sword against so vile and insolent a man, went toward him receiving a most happy blow upon his helmet, and with incredible swiftness running at him smatcht him 'twixt his strong arms, and as he were a little child pluckt him from his saddle, and impatiently governed by his present fury, kept to the bridge side and over it tumbled him down into the river, where through the weight of his armour he was straight overwhelmed, leaving the beholders to imagine at the word that the Foolian cried out; Oh immortal Gods, what mighty strength is this in one Knight? It is wonderful great (said Don Gallaneo) that was something moved seeing him and more curiously speake looking on him, thought that was the same of the noble Knight at Constantinople: yet he doubted it, being so far distant thence, not imagining he would come hither, by reason of the difference of religion. Yet seeing those Ladies there, did greatly suspect it. And again turning his eyes towards him he saw one of the Knights of the Bridge pushed forward against him, Don Bellianis that also went to meet him with a Lance, although the Duke called to stop to it he did, I have no need thereof, having employed mine own to it: but making the Knight in the

middle of the bysage, was forced to lose his stirrop by the encounter, and meeting with horses shields, and bodies, the knight fell down brained, with his head all battered. Don Bellianis horse with the shock rested immovable. till with his spurs, he made him like a whirlwind fly, even to the place where the Dolphin and his company were, that firmly had their gazing eyes, fixed on him. The Dolphin seeing one of the Giants coming against him, said, Take a Lance (Sir Knight) for you will greatly need it in this last prepares for you. It is my Counties cost me (most excellent Lord) that the Knight which in jousting before a King or Emperour, loseth his encounter, though the little valour of his worth, may not until he have ended the battle take another, which makes me now against my necessity use without it: and so granting and with great courage managing his horse, the spur'd against the Giant, who not minding to leave his lance, though he saw the Prince without any, pickt against him, but he drawing his sword before they met, cut it in two, and stepping aside with his horse, let him pass in such an amazement, that missing whereon to hit and stay himself, ran headlong forwards, and at last horse and all tumbled down, the Giant resting soe battered with the terrible fall: and the Prince seeing it, set himself in his place expecting the rest of his Adversaries: against whom came the Knight that first jousted with Don Brianell, and staying for him, at the instant he would encounter him with his Lance, leapt aside with his horse, making him lose his stroke, and with great force turning upon him, snatched his Lance out of his hands, and there with with one blow feld him to the earth, and returning to his place, brandid it with great joy. The lookers on, had almost perswaded themselves to dream with the sight of such admirable exploits. The Duke was so ravished with gladnesse, that he knew not what to say, to whom the Princess Aurora spake. What think you (Sir) of the Knight in the talony Armour? What may I think or say? (said he) but that in no time or age of men, were never like herofek actions performed: and if he can so well use his sword, as he can his Lance mounted on his Courser, I doubt not but without impediment, we shall passe the bysage. Straight shall you be assured thereof (said she.) And to brake off their talk: for Don Bellianis with the spear he had taken

taken from the Knight opposed himself against that mighty Giant, that blaspheming old Mahomet, came against him with such fierceness, that foaming like a Boar, and guided with a hellish rage most thick smoke issued from the Mouth of his Horse, and in the middle of the spacious Field encountered, that the Giant by a his Lance on Don Bellianis Shield; which sliding on it made him a great wound, whence issued much blood. The Prince struck in such manner, that piercing his Shield and Armour, mightily wounded him on the breast: and both making with their Horses, the Giant measured his length on the earth, and the Princes horse set both his knees on the ground, wherewith he rested so amazed, that he had not the rein-maintenance to spur him. Whereat the Prince Advised that I to him in such a trance and thinking him wounded to the death, would have helped him. If the Duke had not bid him stand still to see what the Knight would do; who greatly abashed at their unhappy success, did together go all against him: but before they arrived they Prince had recovered himself, and very choerick through that accident straight dismounted, and embracing his Shield, drew his Sword with such fury, and little fear, as if he had but to do with one Knight. The Knight is not in his wits (said the Sophy) to leave his horse in such a time, having to do with so hardy Knights, who are compensating him, do bestow such mighty blows, as might dissolve the limping Gods black steeled legs. The Giants being somewhat slow in striking by reason of their boisterousness, hoisted up their steeled Battel-axes, thinking to end the battel with their first blows: but the discreet Prince knowing how grievous those strokes were to suffer, kept aloof that both alighted in vain, and he reached one of them such a blow on the leggs, that he cut it quite in sunder: who not able to sustain himselfe thereon, fell downe; yet was he stricken in such manner that he was wounded in two places, while he slew the other Giant on the head, that the blood ranne down his eyes, and defending himself with his Shield from the Knights blows, struck him on the arm that he held the Axe, that both fell together for company, and the Giant going to take that with the other hand, could not through the excessive pain of the

fall by the encounter: and again he was so mightily founded on the head that he tumbled at his feet: and because he had put him in such trouble, sought all means to cut off his head, but the lights laid on him as did the cyclops, when at Venus request by Vulcans command they forged Aeneas armour in the very burning Etna mount, which forced him to sustain himselfe on the ground with his hand. but he redoubling his force, with enraged valiancy, seeing the Giants troubled him no more, turned upon the three brethren, and wounded one of them which most vexed him on the head, that he cleaved it in two, the others embraced him, thinking to overturne him, but they might as well tell the stars of Heaven, or with casting water fill the wide vast Ocean Sea. For the Prince being the strongest knight of forces in the world, that few or no Giants could equal him therein, so bravely held one between his arms that he thrust the peeces of his armour into his flesh that the crimson blood gush from his veins exceeding fast. And seeing that himselfe lost no small quantity, procured to shorten the fight lest he might therein faint, and so made them think (drawing them both to the Bridge side) that he would throw them into the river; which they perceiving, and the excitement that they were brought to, demanded of him mercy for their last lives. At which instant arrived the Sophy, and said; Seeing they can no longer defend themselves (Sir Knight) be satisfied with what you have done. For which your victorious name shall ever be eternized throughout the spacious continent of this earthly ball, having ended the greatest Adventure, that ever Knight attempted. I am content to obey your command (most excellent Lord) answered the Prince, on this condition, that they no more maintain this custome. What cannot they doe (replied the Sophy) for it was their own agreement. When the Prince leading the knights, gave God thanks that so delivered him from that great danger which they thought he did to their Gods. The Princes Arfileo, and Don Brianel, whose armour was taken away (with the hope to doe the like by them all) with the Duke Alaron, and the Princesse, went and embraced him with such love, as if he had returned from death to life. And the Duke was somewhat abashed of the little confidence he had shewen of them.

CHAP. XIII.

How the Knights were receiv'd of the Soldan of Persia: and their conference with the Princess: Persiana.

The Princess Persiana and Don Gallaneo, being desirous to speak with the Duke Alfiron, having understood by some of the Knights that he was there, were going to him, but he alighting from his horse went to kiss the Sophy's hands, and humbled himself before him, whom the Sophy but then seeing, embraced, and raising him from the ground, said, I am glad Duke, to see you come to honour our triumphs, chiding bying to our Court such Knights as these, especially he in the company at most, whom I would have you tell me what they be assuring you they would cannot afford his like, and I rest so amazed that I know not if any humane strength be able to accomplish what he hath. All the rest of his company affirmed it scarce believing what their own eyes had seen: and the Duke answered, It was you (my gracious Lord) whom I would intreat to demand it of them; for though they came in my company, it is but very little since I met them, and if they do not declare it to you, I doubt they will not do it to any other. Speak to the Princess Duke, said the Sophy, while I talk with the Knights, and going a little further, said to Don Bellianis that was mounting on the Giants horse with whom he first joined, whose like for himself strength and valour the whole Persian Empire did not then contain: but perceiving the Sophy came towards him, would not mount, but as he was about to humble himself to kiss his Royal hands. The Sophy holding him with one hand because he should not kneel, with the other dismounted, and embracing him with great affection, I do, There is no reason for Knight why you should kneel to any, deserving for your valour and incomparable bounty the same duty of every one. But for one only thing must I now intreat you, which I am sure you will not deny me, judging your courtesy no less than your bravery courage, of which all such Knights as you should as much prize themselves, as of their proper valour, which thing before I express it will therefore bind you by your promise, Tell me (most mighty Lord) answered Don Bellianis, what you will command me: for barbarous and uncivil were.

were he that should deny so great a Lord any thing, in the highest degree appertaining to your Royal Service; although a Knight of such small consequence as I, lesse then your behoof should satisfy. Whereupon the Duke, Don Gallaneo and Princeesse Persiana, after their greetings, came thither to know the conference betwene him and the Knight: so did the Princeesse Aurora and the rest of the company, who were entertained with such copious, as if they were known to be the greatest Warrs of the world. At length the Princeesse Persiana thus said to the Princeesse Aurora. I do intreat you (fair Lady) lest we should derogate from the honour by your exercise thereof and the ta'nt of your attendant Knight's you seem to deserve; you would manifest the state and royalty of your descent: for although you desire to conceal it, yet your worthiness will shine from the dignity of your birth. She humbling her self, said, I rather desire (most excellent Princeesse) you should still conceive that opinion of me (though undeserved;) for after you should know me, my small deserts will then lose the labours you now shew me: for the meanness of my state is such, that it both not merit the fruition of these labours. Seeing you will have it so, I will no longer postpone you (replied the beauteous Persiana) so evidently telling me, we merit not to know you, save onely by your outward signs. But setting aside the worthiness of your person, that well deserveth we should all obey you, let me then receive the labour, that you would vouchsafe to lodge within the Solian my Fathers Palace. We may say now doe any thing herein (said Arsileo) more then the Knight in the tawny armour will command, to whom all obedience is due. Say then (said the Soldan) if we list to know it, we shall easily know it by force of arms, but seeing he hath promised me a boon, this shall be it (said he) turning to Don Bellianis, that you all take off your Helms, and that we may know your Names. Don Bellianis stood somewhat pensive not knowing what to answer, yet thinking that the longer he kept silence they would the more suspect, he at last thus replied, Truly excellent Lord, you have demanded me a thing that by my will I never would discover, but seeing I can do no less, there is no reason I should deny it, and therefore will declare it with licence of this my company. Thus

The Honour of Chivalry

will allow whatsoever you shall doe, said they. The Princess Aurora was at this time in great fear lest they should be knowing, thinking that Don Gallaneo had seen them in the Castle when Don Brianell was carried thither; but they received them silently; for he had not seen them but armed when he was there taken. Don Bellianis replied to the Soldier, said, You shall know (my good Lord) I am called the Knight of the golden Image, because I bear it on my shield, and I assure you, at this present I have no other name, neither may I have it, till I be commanded to the contrary. This my companion pointing to Don Brianell, manifested the venturous knight, and this other to the Prince Arfilee; if ever you heard him named before. Prince and some other of the Kingdom of Rafia. This Lady, whom we accompany, is the King of Carcasia's daughter, with whom through a certain adventure we were all going to the King her Father's Court; of which is almost noble Lord what in this case I can declare, protesting by the faith of a knight, I may not more discover; for I my self do not know it. You have done with me (replied the Soldier) although I desired larger information; and seeing there remains no more to doe, I pray you grace your helmes; that my desire may be further satisfied. Arfilee and Don Brianell straightway obeyed, being very glad to hear how well Don Bellianis had answered: which done, they all highly commended themselves their brave disposition. The Princess Aurora being so sorrowful not knowing what reply Don Bellianis would make, with great joy stepped into him, adulated his helm: whose safe complexion with the gallant constitution of his well knit members, and strength of body was highly admired, having his hair like threads of mass gold, of which he was hanging on his shoulders. The sight of this his rare favour, with his haughty exploits in arms, made them amazingly think him, the offspring of the mighty God of war, judging it impossible that any mortal creature should possess two such extremes, wherein he surpasses all in the compass of the earth. He was of stature higher than any knight of that time, his hands long and slender, be tokening his exceeding strength; his shoulders big and large, whose breadth might mainly beare the pleasant burthen of old Atlas' forces. His face whiter than the purest Alabaster, commixt with the roseate colour of a natural

Don Bellianis was placed his eagle-penetrating instrument of sight, as bright as the resplendent rays of the mercurial Sun: and in Jerusalem, there was none a-fitted with black heart-oppressing melancholy, but in examining his perfections, would on a sudden himself that enemy to quiet pleasure. He had moreover a certain manner of mild gravity, that with it he drew unto him the love of the admirers: so; it being with anger moved, there could be no counterpains more stern than his; yet he so restrained himself by forcing it from him: that straight he would expel it. He was a great maintainer and lover of justice, that if any did commit a fault, or a crime, he himself would see him punished. None in his time could equal him in forces. His speech was rare, but wise, and never spake but premeditated upon occasion. When he beheld such accomplished perfections and compleat valor in one knight, he again embraced him, conceiving so great pleasure, that had not the marriage of his daughter been so forward, he would willingly have with him: further knowledge what he was, given him for his wife, and at last he spake their silence with these words: O glorious Knight, I implore of no fault in you, in being so unwilling to discover unto us your rare parts, which anely to the immortal Gods, as this is altogether proper and appertaining to themselves do belong, to whom I render recompense thanks, that in my time they have vouchsafed to send so great a wonder among us: which our age. At that time Don Bellianis would have kissed his hands, which he not consented, arrived the Princess Persiana with Don Galliano, leading with them the Princess Aurora. Whereupon the Soldiers and the Knights mounted on their horses, and the Ladies on their Paleys, and Don Bellianis having his young wife dressed by the Damosels, who also did the like to the Knights of the Bridge they took their way to Percepolis. The Duke's train was exceeding merry, to have in their company so famous knights for whose triumphs: Don Brianell, that was called the adventurous Knight, stopped to the beautiful Persiana, and as one that in Courtly courtship, any pleasant discourses was insatiable to none, said to her: O King's Princess, my name is not opposite against any labour I may receive, I beseech you make me thereby assured firm against all changes of all rebelling chance: in sign whereof, grace me by your grant, with the

The leading of your Palfrey by the reins, whereby I may wish the fruition of your divine company, in joy all that I may desire, which is to rest sole yours for ever. Since your knight (meaning Don Gallaneo) hath taken on him my office with the Princess my Lady. This he said because Don Gallaneo did lead the Princess Aurora's palfrey. Which though she suffered, was to dissemble that she knew him not, rather desiring his death, than at his hands any such favour. The like wish wished the Duke Alfron. The Princess Persiana, no less gallant in talk, than rareness of beauty, replied :

I would not (sir knight) that about your service, the Princess your Lady and I should jar : but seeing she doth accept a stranger for her service, she shall receive the reward of her change : and therewith she gave him the reins, which he gladly took, to whom the Princess Aurora said, I know not, an adventurous knight, wherein I have so much discontented you, that you should so soon be down me in oblivion : but if it were in commanding you to probe the adventure of the voyage, henceforth will I be more considerate, and so you shall be less grieved ; yet notwithstanding all things have so well befallen you that you have no cause of grievance. True, said he, if the Prince Arfileo had not got more by that proof than I. What have I obtained more ? demanded Arfileo. The commandment of my Lady the Princess (said he) besides the horse you have under you. So have you got your armour which you have lost (answered Arfileo) for which you are beholding to the knight of the golden Image. I have no reason to thank him for it (replied he) for he did it more to keep his own that are so excellent, than because I should not lose mine. Then were it good, said Don Bellanis, since you will not thank me for them that you restore them back to me. We shall not so soon end this quarrel as you did the other (replied Don Brianell) for the knights looking for yours, would to have them, willingly let me have mine. Let this pass (said Don Gallaneo) for had you lost these your gallant dispositions you would have gotten others. In this manner at length they arrived at the City, even at the days departing, giving place unto the nightly glittering stars, twinkling in the firmament, where they found the people attending for their coming with lights and torches, who in troops

filled up the streets, that they had no way to pass; for the news being spread, that one knight had vanquished the keepers of the unhappy palace, they all flockt to see him as a wonder, demanding one of another which was he, never enough satisfied with his sight, that all his while talked with Don Gallaneo, till they all came to the palace gate, where they alighted. The beauteous Persiana was dismounted by Don Bellianis, that said to Don Brianel: I have at this time (Obr Adventurous Knight) receiv'd you of the reward of your labour, having on foot obtained moze than you in all this journey. For as I am against me (rep'd he) but I may have a time to rep' quittance with you for it. Don Gallaneo taking the Prince's Aurora in his arms, they all entered the royal Hall, whence all their company departed. The Soldier importun'd the three knights to stay within the Palace, which he could not obtain. For they answered they would in no wise leave the Duke, till the triumphs were ended: so said the princess Aurora, that never would disassociate her knights; and so with leave of the Soldier and his daughter, they also departed.

Well did Don Bellianis note when they were taking their leave, how the Duke Alfron shew'd no good will towards Gallaneo, wherefore he was desirous to be certified thereof: and being come to the Dukes palace, that was one of the best and greatest in the City, Don Bellianis would not stay for supper: but finding himself weak, through the much blood he had lost, cast himself on a bed that was made for him, where his Damosels did again dress his wounds. While the Duke and the rest sat to supper: where they were so well served, as they had been in Constantinople, and after went to visit Don Bellianis: whence departing, they went to repose their wearied bodies.

CHAP. XIII.

The conference between the Princess Persiana, and the Duke Alfron, with the Knight of the Golden Image.

The next morning scarce had the Sun mounted on his fiery waite, to make his orded course about the world, but the Duke Alfron went to visit the Knight of the Golden Image; for, by no other name would he be known to them, unless it were to

to the Princess and Ladies: and entering his chamber, he found him rising, though his wounds were great. The Duke with a kind congey gave him the good morrow, and said, Trouble not your self to rise, Sir Knight; for your wounds may put you in great pain. Thinking you went to the Courney (answered the Prince) I would make me ready. What shall we do there to day, replied the Duke? but I beseech if the Soldan know you were so weak he would come to visit you. Then were it not a misse (said the Prince) to save him that labour.

With this entered the Ladies also to visit him, blessing him in no case to rise till they further advised him: where with he lay still: and so the Ladies left him with the Duke. But he having great desire to be avenged on Don Gallaneo by reason of the promise he had made his father, and perceiving the Duke had like intent, and desiring to know it, said to him: Tell me Sir, which of all those knights was the Prince Don Gallaneo of Antioch? That was he (replied the Duke) that tied the Princess Aurora by the reins of her palfrey, born to rob me of my earthly joys. What is the cause thereof, demanded he, for so great a Lord as you should easily be revenged on any person whatsoever being moved thereto. Wh's is not the thing that may remedy my grief (said the Duke. Yet I pray you let me know it (said Don Bellianis.) Then thus began the Duke. I was a long time captivated in the love of the beauteous Princess Persiana, and of her so highly favoured, that with little labour I might have obtained her for my wife, if my rebelling sates had not opposed themselves against my happiness: and so declared to him the whole process of his love with such sorrow, that Don Bellianis could not restrain his tears, taking great compassion of him, though glad in that this might be a means to effect his own intent, and thus answered. Do not think your matter so hapless, but imagine you may by some means attain the Princess Persiana to your wife. I cannot persuade my self (replied the Duke) there may be any remedy for my grief. For to morrow after dinner the Founts begins, and the same morning the Princess is married to Don Gallaneo, whereby I see no hope but death, for anchorage, and end all my pains, or to deprive my life of my vital fences, before my eyes do view it, Do not afflict your soul (said Don Bellianis)

for I have thought upon a mean which if you agree there o, is, that to morrow we meet at the Courty where if Don Gallaneo (thinking himself the best knight in this Court) doth enter, there also I mean to be in an unknown armour, and meeting with him will disappoint him of his new betrothed love. For I have no less desire then you to send him out of the world. And to the end with more secrecy we may do it, you shall give out I am so sore wounded that I am unable to rise, and so Don Gallaneo shall not scape my hands, and your intent shall be at full accomplished. If this fall you have such knights, that with them manage all the Court, I will conduct her where you will. The Duke hearing this knew not where he was, with joy, and embracing him said. Not without great cause (renowned knight of the golden Image) did I from the first hour I saw you comprize such love of you, and was so suddenly offered, as the man in whom might consist the remedy of my torments, although we know not fully how we shall accomplish it, by reason at this present there is above 50000 knights in the Court that I doubt we shall not so easily scape with our lives, for all I little regard my own. Think not so much on the end (replyed Don Bellianis) if you see the matter happily begun; for there is nothing so surely grounded, but the beginning will require great labour, especially such enterprizes as these. Wherefore my opinion is, seeing our time is so short, that you send half of your men to attend our coming in the way we must take, some ten miles hence, taking with them double horssing that when we arrive with ours tired, and being there forced to fight, we may find fresh horses, and this done a thousand chosen men will serve to fetch her hence, so that they perfectly know the way. The Duke liked well of this counsel: where they broke off, being advertised how the Soldan and the Princesse Persiana, with all the chief nobility (except Don Gallaneo) that remained about another matter, which shall be declared, came to visit him. Wherefore the Duke hearing it, went to meet him, and for all his haste found him coming up the stairs talking with the Princesse Asileo, Don Brianell, and Aurora that went forth to receive them: who when they saw the Duke go toward them the Princesse Persiana said, I fear (great Duke) you are already assisted of the victory of the Juffs, being in com-
pany

pany of such valiant Knights, which makes you thus keep your Chamber at this time a day, notwithstanding I can tell you, you have many aduersaries: therefore advise your self and look well what you have to doe, and trust in your own valence perform. The Duke kneeling before her, demanded her beautious handes to kiss them for the favour she did him by her good counsel, and that no e might hear replied, if your diuine labour, most excellent Lady doth not forsake me, I may securely rest fearless of all dangers: but I doubt I shall with your absence remain altogether unable thereto, having lost the fruition of your diuine labour, possessed by a stranger in my sight. The Princess made him selfe, and that she might more at her pleasure talk with him, took him by the hand, and that ebery one might hear, said, saying you have thus long been idle, I mean now to task you for your labour; for you shall be this day my Guardain, so that the aduenturous Knight may not be both the Princess and mine, and therefore with I requiuce him having so long forgotten me. When belike my self being dauntous (said Don Brianell) to obtain both your labours, must now fear to lose all: yet am I content that my Lord the Duke may have the inheritance of my place. When chancing they arrived at Don Bellianis lodging, who would have risen to receiue them, but the Soldier would not suffer it: and going to his bed side, demanded how he felt himselfe: whereunto he replied, I cannot but now well (most exalted Lord) telling so bound to your imperial Majesty, that I know not how I may acknowledge satisfaction for the least of these your royal labours, which forceth me in no lesse pain, then the grief of my late receiued wound. While they were all earnestly talking, the Princess Persina said to the Duke, What intend you to doe against to morrows Tournament, or will you not be there? I will do no more (said he) then you will command me; for I came with no other intent. When she said; saying you leaue it to my dispose, I think because the Knight of the golden Image, by reason of his wounds can not be there, that you shall not; for you shall reap greater labour at my handes then Don Gallanes: in token whereof I present you this flag, and set it on the top of your Crest, which with my handes I wrought, and known to any: which that none should see she took it out of her pocket:

pocket, and gave it him. The Duke received it with wonderfull content and kiss her hand, resting the joyfullest man alive. Think not much of that I do, so; my father seareth it and I would put my self in danger to avoid it: and I have greatly rejoiced that you brought with you such valiant warriors, as at the unhappy bridge I saw. For if the Knight of the golden Image were not as he is, I would have intreated him to procure to dissolve this Patch, done contrary to my hearts intent. We and I have conferred about it, as matter (said the Duke) yet speak you with him about it, that he may know this to be with your consent; whereupon she then went to his beds side, while the Souldan talked apart with Arsileo, whom he highly esteemed, knowing him to be as great a Prince as Don Bellianis had said. The Princess Berliana seeing so good occasion, demanded how he felt himself with his great wounds, as much grieving for them as though he were the Prince her brother, and the more, being in time when she so much needed the help of his unconquerable strength to the subverting of her enemies: whereunto he answered; I do feel myself (most excellent Princess) very weak, especially to accomplish any thing appertaining to your high service; wherefore assuredly command and employ me any way wherein my willingness may prevaile for your behoof. It is no small promise (replied she) you offer me; so; as I do greatly need it, so shall I have cause to employ the greatest part of your valour. And therefore (most glorious Knight) know, as you already have understood of the Duke, that the Souldan my father hath determined to marry me to the Prince Don Gallaneo; which doth so torment my passion-broken heart, that I here vow, if all other means of my desired remedy do fail me, my proper hand shall finish the tragick scene of my afflicted life, ere I will consent to this unfortunate wedding; and though many Nobles have solicited my father to the contrary, yet will be not be satisfied, answering them words unbecoming both his Majesty and their Estates. Wherefore if I have cause so to complain of my soul consuming griefs (if ever you felt the like) you may easily judge. And so conclude, I have determined to marry none but the Duke Alfron the Contreleur. For when I saw your high admires deeds in the battel, I then assured my self of help. But now through your grievous wounds

it hath since so increased, that had I not discovered my discontent unto you I had so morrow wedded me to death, rather then to him I so abhor. Therefore this only I intreat you that commiserating the state of me the most unhappiest Prince's loving, you would procure some redress to terminate my woes, that I may not fall into h's hands whom most fully I hate, I mean Don Gallaneo, wherein you shall commit no error against my father, whose betraying honour with his life, will be augmented by his death. For Don Gallaneo is not the man that merits his daughter, being a Knight of the least faith at this time living. And I cannot be persuaded that so famous and glorious a Prince as the Emperour of Greece, could by him be assaulted unless it were with treason and such like. And the greatest reassurance to my heart is, I cannot in some night steal out of the Palace, and so depart with the Duke where so ever he would convey me: which my father suspecting keepeth me with a Guard. Thus have I (Sir Knight) disclosed the tenor of my griefs, beseeching you that if any hope hang in the angry sky for my release, you would let me know it, assuring your self, I will refuse no danger, and will undergo all perils, accounting them as greatest pleasures, so thereby I may frustrate this detested match. Don Bellianis all this while rested much amazed to see how passionately the Princess grieved, and with what confidence she had manifested unto him her mind: and without longer deliberating on the matter as if he had resolved thereon, with consent of his companion, replied: Great is the pleasure I have received (most excellent Princess) with the knowledge of this your resolve, having thereon, ere this conferred with the Duke, and so I only expected this your high command, and also hoping you will bind me to your perpetual observation, by your visitation I remained thus in her, by which occasion I more conveniently might know the resolution of your mind, which now being assured of you, shall need no more then commit the execution of all unto my charge, your self seeming to know nothing: for I protest and promise you we set more after to put on armour, if this marriage be effected with Don Gallaneo. And doubt not but with the help of the immortal Gods, it shall be as I say: but lest we should force suspicion by our long discourse, I will not any

any longer stay you. With which conclusion she rested the contented Lady in the world, seeing how well those affairs would proceed according to her desire, onely for that the Knight of the golden Image had so confidently undertaken so weighty a charge. And so after some ceremonies betwixen them, she fell in discourse with the other Knights and Ladies while the Soldan was taking his leave of Don Bellianis and the Princess Aurora; and the like did his daughter. Which done, and both parties resting content, they departed toward the Palace, and with them the Princess Arileo, and Don Brianell, with the Duke, who leading them there, returned to their lodgings to order their determined purposes: whereupon they straight commanded that two thousand Knights should that night depart, and attend their coming to Diana's grove. And themselves prepared how and in what manner they would meet in the Courtyard the ensuing day, and so expecting the next morrow with hope to execute their determination.

CHAP. XV.

What conference passed between the Prince Don Gallaneo, and his cousin Don Galfeo the unknown: and how they resolved to kill the Knight of the golden Image and his Companions.

Many and great were the thoughts that troubled Don Gallaneo, seeing that the Knights of the Golden Image had ended the Adventure of the Widge, which made him imagine he should know him by comparing the hanghty deeds he then had done in that battel, to equal those he saw him do in the conflict at Constantinople, where he aided the Emperour Don Bellaneo: wherefore taking apart his cousin Don Galfeo the unknown, brake into these speeches: I cannot tell (good cousin) whether you have marked what I have, and knowen that which grieves me to the heart: yet notwithstanding, know for certainty, and I am perswaded that the Knight of the golden Image is he that fought against us at Constantinople, in the battel of the Emperour Don Bellaneo: whom if he, then comes he only to procure our niter overthrow, by untimely death. For though the Emperour should be dead, yet I so fear them, that until I have the Princess in my power, I shall not rest, through extremity of passions, of those

those disturbing thoughts which have so harass'd me of my senses; that I know not what course to take. Don Gálleo herent amazed, did reply. Oh her I have been blind, or not my self, in not missing those Knights, as you have: yet assure your self (for so do I) that the Emperor is himself come disguised with them. For in the conflict with him, there was but two, and now there is three, which doth confirm it, else could no Knights in the world perform such admirable deeds against the Knights of the badge, but the Emperor. Wherefore determine what you will have done with them since we have them at our pleasure in the Dukes Palace. None of them is the Emperor; for I know him very well (said Don Gallaneo.) But know (I think it best) to morrow when the jousts begin, the Duke being general of the Adventurers, and I of the Courtiers, you shall take five hundred chosen Knights, and with them march to the Dukes lodging, which you shall find with out any guard. There go up to the Chamber the Knight least in sores wounded, where you may easily deprive him of his life, and the like will I do by his companions in the field. All this approved, Don Gálleo being as false a traitor as his cousin, and that night they prepared those men they thought meet for that Enterprize, determining to put the Princes to death before their malice were known.

CHAP. XVI.

How the Tourny began: and in what danger the Adventurous Knight, and Arisleo were put by Don Gallaneo's Knights,

NOW sooner had the splendent Sunne, expelling the obscure darknesse from the glomy skies clearing the morn with his bright light, on that in every place so celebrated day of S. John, but with unspeakable and long hoped joyes, there began in the City of Persepolis, such echoing noise of military instruments, as if it had been like to be subverted by fury of some terrible assault of soveraign foes. Through the streets were nothing seen but most sumptuous and rich furniture, and many and diverse rare inventions, for all manner of new devised gallies. All the people prepared themselves as appertain'd to the celebration of so mighty a Princesse Nuptials. The Knights on the other side, though they apparelled themselves with rich triumphant robes,

robes, yet had they special care of their armor, and horse, which
 in the afternoon they would use. The Prince Don Gallaneo
 (after he had agreed with his cousin that towards the evening he
 should be intendeth to execute their appointment) did super-
 biously adorn himself, and accompanied with many Knights and
 Lords, in number two thousand, he went to the Palace, where by
 the way he met the Kings of Armenia, and Tessifany, with
 many other Strangers, amongst whom were above thirty Dukes
 and Earls, and with the sound of innumerable Trumpets, and
 all other sorts of harmonious Instruments, whose far resound-
 ing noise made all the valley there as if singing, echo with the
 sound till they arrived at the Palace, where they attended their
 return, while the excellent and fair Princess Perfianna stood
 forth with admired beauty, that it more increased the Duke
 Alfrons grief. Her Gown was of white Satten cut upon cloth
 of Gold, laced with Silk, and golden Twist, and drawn forth
 in roses in the middle of every one was set an oriental Pearl of
 great bigness, that it made the Gown of such exquisite value, that
 every one esteemed it worth no less then the whole City of Per-
 sepolis, her amber hair like the threads of finest gold, was in-
 tressed in a net of the same stuff knit together, wherein was plac-
 ed a Cozenet, set with great and fair Sapphires, in the midst
 whereof stood a Stone graven with the Image of the God of Love,
 with his bow and arrows: whose sparkling brightness would
 have darkened the light of a great Torch. The Duke Alfron-
 when he saw her in this manner, remained altogether without
 feeling: which Arfileo (that was nigh him feeling, said unto him
 very softly, Look to your self (most noble Duke) lest you discover
 what hitherto hath been unknown, Whereat the Duke rebe-
 red himself, greatly abashed at the accident: but every one was
 so occupied in seeing the Princess, that they little regarded any
 other. Whereupon the Prince Arfileo and Don Brianell, took
 her by the hands and led her to the Palace stairs, where they all
 mounted on such horses and palfreys as appertained to their
 high state: in which equipage they went to their chief Temple,
 where by the high Priest they were married according to the
 Pagan rites: which done, they returned to dinner, dining to-
 gether drowned in all earthly joys, wanting nothing that
 any

my mortal heart can by wishing comprehend, though at the banquet the thoughts of many were diverse: For the Duke Alfonso thought how he might take the Princess from Don Gallaneo, and enjoy her after the liking Don Brianel and Arleio, how they might spoil him of his life, and he of theirs, with the knights of the golden image: but the Princess Persiana had all her imaginations built upon the promise of the knight of the golden image, than on the diversity of wishes before her.

Dinner being ended, all the knights were to arm themselves to be ready at the appointed hour, with their captain in field. The Jousts were ordained to be within the City, in a spacious and large field, for that purpose appointed. Don Bellianis, though sore wounded, rose and armed him in great armour, interlaced with many streaks of gold which the Duke had given him, who commanded all the knights to march away, leaving him alone, that he might more secretly go himself. The Duke went accompanied with Arleio and Don Brianel, ordering his men as one little esteeming his enemies having so great defence in those two valiant warriors, and his hope in the knight of the golden image, with him joined the Kings of Armenia and Tesslany, having on their side above 25 thousand chosen knights, which in comparison of the Courtiers were but a handful, so Don Gallaneo trebled that number: who by this appeared on the other side with all his troops well ordered and with gallant demonstration. Then on an imperial theatre mounted the Soldan, the two Princesses Persiana and Aurora, that till that time had not gone abroad: who so soon as they were all settled, the Soldan commanded the signal to be given by the Trumpets, whereat Don Brianel, that had the leading of the first squadron set forwards to fight against a kinsman of Don Gallaneo's, whom he had slain with four more before he broke his lance. The squadrons breaking through each other, made such tumult with encounter of spears, swords, and divers other weapons, that beholders thought all the strength of the world had been there met: who so closed together, that having no room to bandy blows, would by wrestling overthrow each other, that horsemen tumbled to the ground, and he that once fell, did more strive to get out of the press, than to return to the fight. But Don Brianel seeing

his enemies to double their men in number, thrust himself with, in the most fury of the battel, where hard by the soldiers there, making with a knight of stature like a giant, called Fydasto the cruel, raised both their swords and together at one time discharged on each other such blows, that Fydasto was overthrown and wounded on the head, and Don Brianell boined to the pommel of his saddle, with great courage slaying himself. This was one of the knights that Don Gallaneo had charged to kill Don Brianell and Arsileo: who seeing h'mself down, with a devilish rage rose, and with a hoar'e voice cryed, Down with the knight, that against the order and law of Chivalry, beareth an edged sword; wherof he had no cause to complain, for he and the other two knights that had the like charge did weare the like. Straight was the adventurous knight encompassed with above a thousand knights, that leaving their tilt, onely procured his death. But he so demeaned himself among them, that in a triffe he beat to the ground about twenty sore wounded: and yet his men could not come to help him, by reason of the multitude that had inclosed him. When Arsileo seeing this most valiantly perisht forth with his troop, and Don Gallaneo, that thought imagined but their deaths, transfixing his truncheon, made against him with all his battel, that Don Brianell might not be succoured: the like did the Duke Alphon with the remnant of his men, and in the midst of the field they met with such forces, that most of them wished themselves far thence at that time. The Duke and the two knights straight entered among their adversaries, performing it very bravely. But Arsileo, that had no other intent than to help Don Brianell, passed thorow the thickest of the squadron, that none durst withstand him, and entered within their ring, where they slew their horses, procuring the like by them. But they began to make such destruction of them, that they had laid at their feet above a hundred knights, some slain outright, and some grievously wounded: and all that beheld the sight, thought it ill done, that so many knights should onely set upon two: insomuch that the soldier was about to descend to part them. Where he leads them, for we must discourse a while what befell Don Bellianis in his lodging.

C H A P. XVII.

What happened Don Bellianis in the Dukes Palace, with Galfco the unknown and his Knights: his death, with the end of the Tourney.

AS soon as Don Gallaneo was departed to the tourney, his cousin Galfco the unknown took the fifty knights, and went to the Dukes lodging, having understood by his spies how he was thence going, and that the knight of the golden Image remained there alone: where being arrived, he commanded his men to follow him up; but then Don Bellianis having put on the Dukes armour, was ready to go to the tilt, thinking it time to be gone. But hearing a noise at the gate, looked out at a window looking upon the stairs and seeing so many knights there, was amazed; and with a loud voice said, What see you here Knights, at such time when all are gone to the tourney? Don Galfco looked up, and seeing him in that armour, knew him not, and assembling his intent said, Good Knight I pray you show us him of the golden Image, for we must needs speak with him. You may not enter here (said he) for the Duke my master hath so commanded. And having so said, went towards the stairs in great haste, where he found Don Galfco entering the gallery, and drawing forth his sword, said, It is in vain knight, whithsoever thou art, to passe farther here, then or any else without the Duke my masters leave. Don Galfco herat conceived such ire by these words, that also drawing forth his sword, said, Down with the traitor that will deny us the entry. But Don Bellianis with his sword put himself among them, that in little space with great fury and force he slew above thirty of them: which so amazed the rest, that they began to retire back as far as the stairs. But with the fury that possessed Don Bellianis, he so handled them, that in an evil hour they came to seek him: and seeing Don Galfco above the rest troubled him, struck him such a blow on the sword arm, that out in two it fell on the earth, and after he gave him another on his head, that cleft it down to his ears. Never was there seen a knight behave himself better among so many. But they pressed upon him in such sort, that he was like to have been greatly endangered: yet he driving them all before him down

down stairs, made such destruction of them, that so very harts they tumbled one upon another: and seeing them give back, followed them out of the Palace, and in their despatch did beat them into a broad yard, thinking better to defend himself there, than in so close a room: where he so used the strength of his mighty arms, that he got a hoise of many that ran loose, wherewith he renewed his massacring of them. There was already gathered much people of the city with their weapons, not knowing the cause why so many were assembled in the Dukes Palace: and when they saw them all upon one knight, they helped him. Don Gallaneo's knights, with more than the third part of their fellows dead, and seeing Don Galfeo slain, and how their treason for that time would not be effected, by the extreme valour of that knight, fled away. Don Bellianis not willing to follow them, turned toward the Dukes Palace: where taking one of them, he set his sword to his throat, and threatened to kill him, if he denied the cause of their coming in that manner to seek the Knight of the golden Image, and in presence of many of the City, he confessed, how commanded by their Lord Don Gallaneo, they came to murder him. What meant your Lord by doing so? (said Don Bellianis,) I know no more than I have said (replied the man.) So he praised (said Don Bellianis) that your Lords treachery hath not taken effect. Then mourning his horse he rode to the tilt-yard, where he looked on every side, and saw how the Dukes men carried back, setting for the Princes Arfileo and Don Brianell, and not seeing them, he took a big Lance, and put himself against Don Gallaneo's knights, and the first he met he overthrew to the ground, doing the like by above thirty before he brake it, and encouraging the Dukes falling troops, renewed their fight so fiercely upon the Courtiers, that they feared to lose what they had before won. And like a man distract, not saving his companions, so wounded his adversaries, that happy was he that farthest could get from him, whereby every one made him ample passage to go by, for never a blow he gave neither with sword or lance, but he overthrew a knight. Which when Sophy seeing, cried out, O mighty Mahomet, what admirable strength is this of you knight. But all this while Don Gallaneo and his knights were so roundly beset, that Don Brianell and Arfileo, that

that it was impossible they should escape alive, though most valiantly they defended themselves. When there arrived a Knight to Don Gallaneo and in his ear told him all that befell his countrymen Don Gallaneo with Don Bellianis, who being not far off from them, he pointed to him, and said, This is the Knight that hath so massacred your men. Don Gallaneo turning to see him, said, how with an incredible fury he assailed his Knights that had encompassed the Princes, and that with four blows he struck down four Knights, and making little account of the rest, alighted, and seeing they would not suffer the Princes to mount on horseback, said that every one might hear. Get upon this my horse, Prince Arficer, for since with so great treachery one cowardice you are used, make it known even on their dearest lives. They knowing his voice, conceived such joy, that almost they knew not what they did: who going about to take a fresh horse, so many knights laid on them that they could not do it. Which Don Bellianis seeing, and how it mayed late to be revenged on Don Gallaneo, taking Don Brianel in his arms in despite of all the Knights, set him on his horse: and being on his own, with rage and thirsty fury of long desired revenge, began such distraction among them, that he made way passage for himself and his companions. And seeing two Giants come against him, of four, which Don Gallaneo had brought to the Jousts for the purpose aforesaid, he prepared for them, and receiving one of their blows upon his shield, that was so cruel that it cut it in pieces, he so wounded the other with like strength, that falling on his fingers, it cut them off clean with the space he held: but the other did second so huge a stroke, that he was forced to hold by his horse neck. There was never Tiger seen more fierce, nor Lion more furious than Don Bellianis seemed, who raising himself on his stirrups, and holding his sword with both his hands, gave him such a terrible blow on his thigh, that it entered as far as the bone, wherewith he shortly after died.

What Knight so valiant may this be (said the Soldiers) that doth such wonders? I would willingly have had the Knight of the golden Image here, that he might try his force with this. What Knights deeds be not comparable to these (said the Princess Persiana to her father, the more to cover her intent of any thing

thing that might after happen: for well he knew that Don Bellianis would be in that battel, and so judged that he was. But he following in search of Don Gallaneo, found him at last not far from the Soldans scaffold, where likewise the Prince was, and as a staff bound that hath his game on foot, fearing to lose it, so did he against Don Gallaneo, who also made towards him, and meeting, struck each other such puissant blows, that the sparks of fire flew from their armour, but Don Gallaneo tumbled to the ground sore wounded. When Don Bellianis so saw him, he suddenly alighted from his horse: so did many of Don Gallaneo's knights to help their master: then arrived the Duke Alphonso with four thousand knights, and set so furiously upon them, that murther their force he made them retire back. In which time Don Bellianis wounded him again, wherewith the sword fell out of his hand, and the Duke seeing him on foot, and that to be the time for his revenge, ran against his horse, and overturned him flat on the ground, and trampled twice or thrice on him with his horses feet, making him breathe his last. Which the Soldan seeing, cried out, commanding him he should not hurt him: but the Duke made as though he heard him not; wherupon the Soldan seeing the little account was made of him, like to hurt with extreme grief, descended, still more and more renewing his laments for Don Gallaneo's death, crying, kill, kill the traitor, that so villainously in my presence murthered my son. All the people at the Soldans command, set on the Duke and Don Bellianis: whence the dust began to rise, and triumph and pleasure, these turned to death and destruction, that the fields flowed with blood. The King of Armenia and Tiflany, that saw the battel so hot and cruel, went to the Soldan, and said to him, Suffer not, O great Sovereign, all this company to perish: seeing you know the Duke hath as much power to defend, as you to offend him: therefore command the fight to cease: for if the Duke be guilty of Don Gallaneo's death, you may by law condemn him. The Soldan knowing it to be so, and that before the Duke died by that means, none would remain with life, took this counsel, and commanding the battel there to end, said thus to the Duke, Get you out of my Persopolis (Duke), unless you will here eye, unheard, and unpunished.

The

The Honour of Chivalry.



The Prince Don Bellianis being with him, bade him obey the Soldana's command, assuring himself their purpose could not but have a good end. The Duke taking his counsel, very joyfully commanded the retreat to be sounded, whereat the Knights as well of the one as of the other party, left their fight, returning every one to their Captain, attending his command. Who were here able to express what great gladness the Princess Persiana conceived with Don Gallaneo's death: who lest it might be discerned, called out upon all the Knights of her guard, to imprison and bring her the Duke, and the knight that committed that treachery. The guard replied they might not, because the Soldan was there: who returned extreme sorrowfull, and so furious with rage, that very fire seemed to sparkle from his eyes, that all which beheld him were astonish'd at his stern looks.

And although the King of Thessilany intreated him to return to his Palace, yet he could like no counsel, save what labour'd at revenge. But turning to the dead body, said his Daughter bewail his untimely death, and knowing she always refused to marry him, and now seeing her grievous laments for his death, suspected it was done by her appointment, and not regarding his fatherly love, but governed with rage, took her from the ground, and said:

It boots thee not now Princess to dissemble, for I am sure Don Gallaneo was slain with your consent, and since you would not obey me when I would, I will now punish you as you deserve.

And hereupon he commanded her to be shut up in a Tower, and surely guarded, not hearing her speak. And going thence, commanded all the people of the City to arm them, intending to imprison the Duke in his house, imagining Don Gallaneo's death had been with his consent: and greatly grieved because he could not know that Knight that so endangered him in the battel, not thinking on Don Bellianis, having left him so wounded.

What happened to *Don Bellianis* without *Persepolis*, How he delivered two Damofels from certain Knights, and whence they were: and how he slew the Dragon of the *Riphean* Wood.

THe Duke seeing his purpose thitherto lost as he wished with *Don Gallined*'s death, resolved altogether to follow the counsel of the Knight of the Golden Image. Whereupon he returned to his Palace: and the night having darkned the world, *Don Bellianis* left him in the plain field resigning to go out of the City, though all the Knights there endeavoured to stay him, desiring to know him ere he went. But getting from them all, escaped out of the City, the better in that obscurity to return to his lodging: and he had not gone far, but his pursuers began extremely to grieve him, insomuch he could not stay himself on horseback, for with their new blowing they opened, making him seem a fountain with so many springs; and seeing himself so ill, he thought he should not be able to return to *Persepolis*, unless his wounds were bound up. And so alighting from his horse, he saw two damofels come toward him, riding in such haste, as he thought they did rather fly, than on their palfreys swiftly run. *Don Bellianis* putting himself before them, said, What is the cause (fair Ladies,) that make you to ride so fast? Oh for Gods sake stay us not, but if you will save your life follow us, and by the way we will declare the whole circumstance unto you. Here it will be better (said he) and among these trees you may hide your selves. So they taking his counsel, followed his advice, and beginning to discover their adventures, so they perceived through those trees a terrible Dragon, so fearfull in sight, that it struck amazement in the beholders; and although the night were very dark, yet such light issued from him through the great abundance of fire proceeding from his jaws, that it seemed his mouth opened to swallow them at that instant. The Ladies being overcome with fear, betook themselves about the Knight of the Golden Image, having lost the power of their intended flight, But he seeing it was no time to be idle, rose from the ground with his sword in his hand, and made against the hellish monster, at that time watching rather

to have his armor given him by Bellona tuckled about his body, than be invested Emper^{or} of a larger Empire than his fathers. At this instant the Dragon with an infernal fury flying against him, overthrew him with his breast, and returning to catch him with his talons, to pluck him in pieces; he whom fear never could blind, leapt off, but with great difficulty, for being over-reach- ed, & cruel beast with one of his paws drew him to him, and pierc'd both armor & flesh even to the bones with his deadly claws: but the knight forsaking his sword stab'd his dagger 4 or 5 times in- to his heart under his wings. The fearful beast, through extre- mity of pain left him. Wretch!ag himself and labouring in the pangs of death. He was of such a wonderfull greatness, th't he was a'bove 25 foot long, in bigne's bigger than a great bull, whose like was never seen by any. After the knight of the golden Image had finished this banable deed, and most unquial fight, he fell on his knees, rendering thanks to his Heavenly Protector, that had belsbered him from so great a danger, though with feare to escape the peril of his mortal wounds, wondering how he had blood left in his veins, having lost such great quantities th' reot. And going to the damfels that with fear were not able to fly, he said, Fear now no more (fair Ladies) for the cause of your simerous trance, that put you in no farther peril. They recovering th'ir benumbed senses scarce knowing what to say, the one list- ing up her voice replied. We cannot (Sir Knight) expresse the many thanks due by us, for th's so great good work, whose great- nesses our merits can never deserbe unless by memorizing through the earth your high prowesses, that the perpetual remembrance of this ample act may never be drowned in the black center of obli- vion. And seeing (as it should seem) you were before wounded we beseech you to withdraw your self within this Forrest, that being aske'd of passengers, we may dresse them. I will ob- y any thing you shall command (said he,) and so stepping among those trees, they disarmed him, and began to search his wounds (being very skilfull in that mystery) and greatly marvelled how it had been possible he escaped death, yet though delat- ring of his safety perfozmed their duty with all diligence, and being dresed his wounds they demanded what he would doe. To whom he answered. We will presently to the city, that I may

there have my wounds cured. But how came you & they, said they, being thus wounded? where o he answered, Doubting I should be bloodless through the great quantity that therof I had lost, and throug h faintnesse, being able to go no further, here I layed to bind them. Shall we (said they) take your armor with us to the City? So leads it here (replied he) I li tle need it, respecting the occasion of my going thither. And so mounting on horseback (but with much pain) and the Damosels on their Palfreys, he by the way thus spake. Tell me I pray you the occasion of your sight, when I first met you? To whom they answered. You shall know (Sir Knight) we do belong to the most excellent personesse, and above all the most fair the fairest Princeesse Florisbella, that having sent us to a wise woman, whose habitation is far hence, on a most craggy and barren mountain (and Bellona is her name) to know the fortunes of a beauteous Princeesse conducted by her (called Aurora) of whom since that time none know bath we n heard, through the death of King Pompeiano her father, traitrously slaine by Don Gallaneo, and his Kingdom won by a son of this Sophy, called the Knight of the Images: And we having heard that the Sophy now marrieth his Daughter to the said Don Gallaneo, disguisedly we came to see the said festivals: and coming not far hence, we were suddenly surprized by a most fearful Giant accompanied with some twenty Knights almost in bigness like himself: who having taken us (in the Knights approach) saying a far off some twenty Knights, we crying to them for help, yielded to our request. But the Giant and his Knights at the first encounter unhorsed above the half of them. And so we foreseeing the ill successe like to issue, betwix our selves to the swiftest courses of our palfreys, till we met you. And now (Sir knight) for all we discomfitt the successe of our fortunes, yet still fear the overtaking of those invincible Knights: because through our weaknesse we are like to suffer the cruel stroke of non-sparing death. So approaching near the City they desired these men clad all in armor, who having them within their know the Damosels. Whereat they said, Our travel is now at an end, for we have found what we sought.

The Ladies perceivng them to be the Giants Knights, were like to fall from their Palfreys: to whom the knights said, Be now

now shall not escape us, but shall go to our Lord and Master the
 Wyant Killistone that sends for you. Don Bellanis became ex-
 ceeding wroth, saying himself both sore wounded and without ar-
 mour: yet he thus said to them, In comfesse have I fighte I
 pray you oppose no your violent hands, againe I was distressed
 Ladies that with me are going. We thought (replied they) you
 would content your self with your own liberty meddling not with
 theirs: but now you would not know when you were well you
 shall also go with us; wherewith they would have bound him,
 He perceyving that his courteous words prevailed not, kept
 to one, and caught his Lance out of his hand, in despite of him
 and his friends, tumbling him headlong to the ground. The o-
 thers would have stricken him with their Spears, but he wisely
 escaped their blows; and fiercely running at one, thrust the
 Lance thorow his body, that lifelesse he measured his length on
 the earth. The third struck at him so mightily, that had he not
 lightly kept asse (being as he went unarmed) he had made his
 Lance appear at his back: yet neverthelesse he ran his Spear
 thorow his thigh: so he saying himself sore wounded, drew his
 never-failing sword, and gave him so cruel a blow on his shoul-
 ders, that he cut him down right, that his parted body fell on
 each side of his horse. Don Bellanis going to dismount to dispatch
 him that first fell, felt his thigh pin'd to his saddle with a tran-
 sition of the Spear: but seeing the knight did not stir, left
 him.

All this while the Princess was amazed with wonder seeing
 such destruction in so short time, and with a great joy that she
 said, We can never end (O knight) the celebrating of your most
 high and more then human chivalries, though thereby we be not
 credited, which for all our selves have seen them, yet their admi-
 ration is astonisheth us, that we scarce dare acknowledge them
 to be true. He hearing himself thus commended, replied: Over-
 passing these unworthy praises, let us (said Ladies) enter the
 City, for my great wounds require speedy remedy; and know
 that your travel is now ended, for I do belong unto the Prin-
 cess Aurora, whom when you saw before any, assemble her
 knowledge, for her present occasions so require it. They joy-
 full of such news, answered they would. And so keeping on
 their

their pace, they came to the Dukes Palace, where they found all the knights in armor. Don Bellianis discovering himself to a knight intreated him to lead him to his lodging if he could, unknown to the Duke, till the next morning. Who replied, he might not, for the Duke stayed for him with the rest of the knights, not minding to sleep until his coming. When help me off my horse (said Don Bellianis.) The knight going to doe it spied the spears & truncheon, which he had not taken away, fearing himself to bleed to death; and the knight said, you are so sore wounded, that it were best I call the Duke. Unhorse me first (said Don Bellianis) and take out this truncheon. The knight did so, which was so embued in yt blood wherewith it stuck so fast in his flesh that the drawing thereof so excremely increased his pain that after he was not able to stand, but was carried in two knights arms into the Hall, where they found the Duke with many other Lords; also accompanied with the Princes Don Brianel and Arileo, who though they were greatly wounded, were determined presently to rise in demand of the knight of the Golden Fleece, if they heard not of him. But seeing him come into the Hall in that manner, wayed pale thinking him wounded to death and ran to him. And the Prince's Aurora that first spied him, was first that approached, who with tears in great abundance trickling down her ivory-rosed cheeks, to see him in such danger: without impeach of any, and respect of none, fell on her knees before him kissing his hands, both with joy and grief, insomuch that in her good will toward him, it may be believed she passed his cousin Arileo. The Prince Don Bellianis raising her from the ground, and most kindly embracing her, said. Woe not so much unlesserbed courtiers (most sovereign Lady) to so mean a knight and of so small fame as my self, whose little services will never merit any of these labors, except in counting me, as one of your meanest servants. When were these gratings interrupted by Don Brianel, and the rest that received him with no less courtesies and embracings, then if he were their general commander, especially the Duke who needs would welcome him on his knees though he knew not his high descent. save that he acknowledged he had by his means repossessed his whole estate and life. and with instant gladness he thus began. I greatly wonder (most renowned knight

knight of the golden Image) how you were able to be at the tourney after I here saw the proofs by you done. To whom he replied, I have (most excellent Duke) done no act worthy of your memory. So will (said he) none of Don Galleo's knight's affirm. For at our return we found above 200 of them with their master slain. And we wished you to dilate unto us the cause of their coming to our Palace, and what after hapned to you since your departure, having staid so long, remaining thus cruelly wounded. When thus (replied he) they purposed treacherously to murther me, though by the help of the immortal Gods, their intent was frustrated. The rest I am not able to discourse, for my wounds will not permit me: but of those Ladies shall you know the event of all things, whose good entertainment I request, even as to my Lady and Mistress the Princess here present.

Whereupon Don Bellianis was carried to his lodging, and laid in his bed, where by the Damsels, he was again dressed who greatly wondered at his many and dangerous wounds: and having done, they left him alone, quietly to take his rest; for his extreme pain, chiefly of the wound of his thigh, made him roar like a bull baited with many dogs. The Ladies bring come forth were most courteously entertained of the Lords, greatly admiring the haughty deeds they heard of that valourous knight. Straight were the tables covered (good order being given for the Palaces safety) and they all sat down to supper, where the Damsels discoursed the acts of the knight of the golden Image, in their presence done, saying, Scarce have we report his admirable Chivalries, lest our words be not credited: yet have we been eye witnesses of his deeds. When were they intreated by the knights to unfold them, saying, that if they had seen what before hapned him, they would little esteem those they feared to rehearse.

There can none be comparable to these (answered the Damsels:) and therefore will we satisfy you: and so recounted all that him befel after they met with him, with words of high renown, to the eternizing of his glory. Whosoever shall hear (said the Duke) the admiring wonders of this knight, may hardly believe them: And sure I am, no knight will ever performe what he hath done in so short time: and so reiterating all his Exploits (as heretofore are set down) Oh what possesst

posterity will belide in future ages. these no less great then admirable prowesses of his not only victorious, but happy and never sufficient praises knight. These and such like matters did these Princes treat of at table concerning Don Bellianis. The Princess had by this known the Damoisels, and they her: yet either thought the contrary by their silence. But the Princess imagining the cause was that they were so sojourned by Don Bellianis, said, she would withdraw her self to rest and take those Damoisels with her, and was conducted to their Chamber. The knights after her departure setled themselves to the ordering of all their necessities, touching their menaced perill: so that had intelligence both the Sophy having understood of Don Gallano's death, at his departing from the Courney by some of the escaped knights: yet not informent of the truth, but that going to the Dukes Palace to accompany him to the Courney he was there slain. Whereupon wished all in the City should arm themselves. But the Duke and his faction little feared him: having within the said City above fifteen thousand knight his friends, all in arms, in readinesse, well appointed at command. The Princess being in her chamber made fast the door, to whom the damoisels humbled themselves, craving to kisse her hands: But she not suffering it embraced them with great joy, to whom they thus spake.

What hath become of your royal person? Oh most excellent Adam, whose losse we could not but imagine, having ben so test and subject to misfortunes and calamities? We cannot (great Princess) declare the sufficiency of our joy, conceived with your presence. And no less will the Princess Florisbella receive: who only for this cause sent us to our Aunt, the sage Bellona: wherefore we beseech you, tell us, who these knights be, whose personages compositions, and excellent conditions, deserve admiration, especially him that brought us to the enjoying of your company. I (replied she) know no other, but that I met them in a most strange place, and I thanke the immortal Gods, unconstrained, they condescended to the promise of their aunts, and already my fathers most unfortunate death hath partly ben revenged; for this knight hath slain Don Gallaneo. And thus continued their chat without sleeping, till the better two parts of the night were past.

CHAP. XIX.

What the Sophy did after the battel: and how the green armor of Don Bellianis was brought him to the City.

There is no tongue able to express the great grief the Sophy took conceiv'd by Don Gallaneo and his counsils death whom he dearly loved: and seeing that the Duke kept within his palace, he sent early the next morning above a thousand knights to seek him in the green armor: for he determined by all means to know who he was, having understood he was not gone home with the Duke.

The knights obeying his command, came to the place where the ugly monstrous beast lay slain the sight whereof so feared their horses, that not able to stay them in despite of their riders, they ran away with them. He it is a true conscience surprized the knights, beholding the monstrous of the Dragon that they durst not approach to see what he was: yet seeing he stirr'd not one of them taking heart-a-grace, esteeming himself less fearful then the rest, alighted on foot, and trembling, went where the dead beast lay, and seeing him not move, with the huge quantity of blood wherein he swallowed, called his companions, bidding them not fear, for it was not alive: who well viewing it, were greatly astonish'd to see so deformed a thing, and searching where he had been stricken, they saw his wounds above the legs and thighs, whereby they judg'd the knight that had slain him, could not but be sorely hurt, by being so nigh that the wounds shew'd they had been made with a dagger. And one following the signs of the blood, found the Damocels spantles that they had left with the knights armor, which presently they knew and assured themselves he slew that most ugly beast: in respect whereof, they nothing esteem'd what he had perform'd to their rolls in the Tourney, with the sight of the prodigious and infernal monster slain by his hands: And so they took great compassion on him for the much blood he there had shed: and so finding no sign nor tracing of him to find him, and seeing him armorless, resolv'd to return unto the Sophy, and tell him what they had seen, presenting him the knights armor, and the Damocels spantles: where with going out of the wood, lighted on the two knights slain, and turning them

over,

A 2

119

over, much miled at the horrible blow which the one had, whose like they never had seen before: and going away they met with four knights, that knowing the Damozels mantles, said: We beseech you (gentle knights) tell us where we may find the Ladies owners of those Mantles? We know not (said they,) but why do you demand it? To know what became of a knight that accompanieth them. Why seek ye him? (demanded they) for we also would employ the utmost of our power to find and carry him to our Lord the Soldan. Then know (said the four) that the Giant Fellistone (well known of you) commanded us to find him to give him his due chastisement: though truly yesternight he performed such an attempt, that we believe there breathed not in the Universe any to do the like: for these knights (of our company going to seek those Damozels (which from us fled,) and abut to take them against his will, wounded these two as you see, leaving the other on the earth little better then dead. And since we understood they be all within the City.

Then go along with us: for if they be there, they cannot be hid. And besides these things, he hath done others of greater admiration. So in such talk they continued their way to the City, till they arrived at the Soldans Palace, who seeing the knights armour, thought they also brought him: which greatly gladdened him, descending half way to meet them, demanded for the knight, to whom they answered, we bring him not (right mighty Sovereign) but come to tell you the greatest wonder that ever you heard of, for he alone hath put to death the mighty Dragon of the Ryphean Woods, your whole Kingdomes destruction. O mighty Jove (said the Soldan) who may believe, but with great difficulty such a thing except his eyes should see it. Surely (dead Lord) it is so (replied they) and we judge by the great abundance of blood in that place shed, that he cannot but be almost dead.

Whereupon he hath done another act of no less wonder: for coming unarmed with our two damzels he combated with these knights and vanquished them, cleaving one down right in the middle, and it is also said that he came into the City. The Soldan stood musing with himself whether the knight of the golden image might be he, disguisedly entering the Tourny for the Diana lake.

Yet thought he this unlikely, knowing he remained for a wound-
ed at the combat had with the knights of the unhappy bridge.
But still persuading himself it should be so, imagining no knight
in all the City so hardy, as for to attempt the like. And seeing
the knight could not be found he commanded all the people of the
city to arms, and came to his Palace, for he determined to assault
the Duke, who fearing the same, had all his men in readiness.
Great was the hurly burly through the City among the popula-
rity inquiring one after another what they should do, fearing
some cruel battel to be impendent over their heads.

C H A P. XX.

How the Kings of Armenia and Tessitany conferred with the
Sophy, of the order taken between them, about the Duke:
and how he presented himself before the Sophy.

The doubtful state of these tumultuous cares on either side,
hanging on the uncertain arbitrating sentence of fortune:
the terror of the commonalty of the city seemed no less, then
if the utter ruin thereof were evidently known. The say he
Solomon supposing many inclining to the Dukes faction proclaimed
by sound of trumpet, that none should aid nor favour him on pain
of death, and take him for a traitor; for he only purposed to doe
according to law and justice, if he were found guilty. The prin-
cesses of Persia well heard of these proceedings, whose
news for them, penetrated her tender heart though it was thought
she joys lamented because her father had imprisoned her. But
the coming for the Kings of Armenia and Tessitany, they pre-
sently went to her, when being alone, admitted them to her pre-
sence, whom she with many tears intreated to become mediators
between the Soloman and the Duke, and that they would not con-
sent to the terminating of those affairs, to be by the event of war,
seeing in the end she only should be the only loser, her honour
being sold to and from such unbecoming gains. They with great
willingness promised to doe the utmost of their possibility;
and seeing the matter inferred no delay, and that they likewise
ventured some part of their own, in that they were the Dukes near
allies, did they take leave of the Princess and departed toward

the Soldiers, about the persons with, and his men ready to march. So approaching to him, he greatly rejoiced with their presence, thereby thinking they would fight with him, supposing at first they were gone to the Duke. Whereupon he courteously made out to meet them: to wit (their renowned honour performed) humbled themselves to his hands: but he would not by any means consent thereto: whereat they then began. Alas (said he) what portends these your troops, whose sudden arms cannot but threaten death and utter desolation to this city? but most of all, what means your self to be in person in so dangerous an enterprise, having so many hardy knights able to attempt any important action at your command? I have none (replied the Sophy) whose dutious service and loyalty to me hath deserved such confidence as these affairs require, specially, since the absence of the Prince my son. And well may you see the treason done against me by the Duke: for I am sure it was done both by his consent, and my daughters command; and am certain that he which all these harms hath wrought, is the knight of the Golden Image: and so discomfited what he had understood of the knights, and how he was so sore wounded, that his life was in suspense, and also that he was the same that slew Don Galfes. All which was true; for that distressed knight was in such case, that all his companions greatly doubted his recovery, for which their sorrow was so great, that they wished to disburden themselves thereof, they might be even in their enemies chiefest troops. For in readiness and willingness of mind, there wanted nought but the beginning of the conflict. Why this things not a little marvelled at the Soldiers likewise, whereupon the King of Armenia took occasion to speak as followeth. The knight of the golden Image is not in that greatness of fault as you judge him to (most mighty Lord) for if you would see in the equal balance of right reason weigh the cause, you may plainly see howingently Don Gallano laboured to kill the honorable king, and to subvert the kingdom against all the laws and witness of Conscience, might, and right: your stout claimer to the contrary; but then again he carried their seat by: whereat no man could the knight of the golden Image and the Duke in their own defence did say him. And we know, that the knight of the golden Image, was not the golden Image,

Image, for we learned it of some of them that fled when Don Gallico died, that he which slew him and hang'd them, was the same that returned Master of the Tourney. So that you may well think he determined to do by them, what they did to him and his. Of all which things you should better inform your self, before you come to these extremes. But if notwithstanding you will persevere in these rigorous determinations, consider the many thousand deaths thereby like to ensue: for the Duke will endure no wrong. Remember also (great Lord) the Knight of the golden Image is he (though the chiefest cause of Don Gallaneo's death) that freed you from two great inconveniences; one from the adventure of the unhappy Bytge: the other by the death of the Rhycean Dragon; and that hereof consisteth your own honour in your daughters innocency; and that the Duke may plead his case: and we our selves will go to him, and procure this matter to be tried by combat, or by any other means by you thought fitter, which if you grant, you shall eternally bind us to your allegiance. If you cause the Duke (replied the Sophy) to come and submit himself, I promise you there shall be no wrong proffered him, nor any thing contrary to the right of law and justice; which I only do that if any of Don Gallaneo's kindred should expect any revenge at my hands for his death, they may know what I have done herein. And hereupon I pawn my kingdom faith and royal word unto you. Then said they, Upon this order you may dismiss your men unto their several homes, for we will perform what we have promised. And hereupon the Soldan commanded every man to retire to his quarter, he himself going to the Court to expect the Kings return, who straight repaired to the Dukes Palace, where they greatly rejoiced to see the good order and care by them kept: insomuch that the Soldan was not there able to enter by force of arms, though he brought all his forces redoubled. They being there, demanded for the Duke, and understanding that he was in Don Bellianis chamber, thither went to speak with him: where they saw how the Knight of the golden Image had his wounds by the two Damsels dressed. The Duke received them according to their state, and would have led them into another room, but they would not, looking on the Knights wounds, which they judged the greatest that

that ever they had seen, whereat they much comforted, supposing he would not scape them, though they were greatly satisfied to see with what nimbleness those Witches used him. And having done, they thus said: With such Burgtons (Sir Knight) you ought to feel half the pain enforced by your wounds: whereto he answered. It is so great Lord, for though I should feel never so much, this is double comfort unto me, for else I should not be made happy with the fruition of your royal presence, jointly with the duty you bind me to in touching the remembrances of so mean a knight, being thus pitifully wounded, and not able to leave my bed to employ my self in these troublesome affairs of my Lord the Duke. Take no care for them. Sir knight, said the King of Assyriany, for we come to no other effect, and hope we shall have no great denial about them: and though we should find a y contradiction, yet the Duke shall be so favoured as he shall reasonably doubt nothing that may to him happen. And they declared the manner of the appointment made with the Soldan, so that the Dukes justice should be evidently seen, and be at liberty to answer all objections, or else present his champion to try it in the battel, against whosoever should at his hands demand the death of Don Gallaneo, and that in the mean space the Duke would yield himself to prison, or live for him: all which was betwix us and him so agreed. And know (Sir knight) it is certainly hnted abroad that he which banished the Tourney, and was cause of Don Gallaneo's death, with his cousin Don Galfeo, and that slew the Rhiphean Dragon, and the Gyant Fellistones these Knights, is your self. Don Bellianis somewhat altered his countenance hearing this, yet seeing the Sophy and others knew all his doings, faintly made this reply. First (mighty Lords) have a care what they demand of the Duke, and after we shall have time, if I escape these wounds, to provide for all things else. And moreover on my faith, the Soldan deals unadvisedly and unjustly in his demands against the Duke and should not make account of two such traitors, as Don Gallaneo and Galfeo (whom if in case I did say, I did very well considering with what treachery the one would have withered me in my bed, and the other my Companions in the Tourney: and had I been in that state at more ease, I had better wish my deans
 then

Shew what I cannot so well expresse in words. They were all amazed to see with what passion Don Bellianis pronounced these speeches: and they perceiving he had reason, would proceed no further in that talk, but turning to the Duke, prayed him to resolve with himself to doe what they required. I will do (replied he) neither more nor less in any thing, than what the Knight of the Golden Image shall command me. I humbly kisse your hand (said he) for this your high favour, though in all things else it is well known, that my duty binds me to obey you. But to our matter. I am of opinion, having better judgement, and reposing our confidence on the royal words of these great Kings, you may fearlesse present your self before the Soldan; for I trust you shall have no injury offered you. Thereof be assured (said the Kings) for so the Soldan hath vowed. The Damosels that came with Don Bellianis after he killed the Dragon, stepping to him, said. We have heard (O Knight) the Princess Persiana is in a strong Tower imprisoned, by the commandment of the Soldan her father: wherefore consider, what best in this case may be done, talking as little as you may, because of endangering your wounds and your self. When the Duke was departing, Don Bellianis called to him Don Brianell and Arileo, and prayed them to accompany the Duke, and answer for the Princess Persiana and himself, as occasion should be offered. They being all ready, straight took their way to the Soldans Palace, leaving the Knight of the golden Image in talk with the Princess Aurora and Florisbella's damosels, which were both beautiful and witty, greatly admiring his courage and magnanimity, from whose presence they were not parted day nor night, but had placed their beds a little from his, the better to watch and help him at his need, who (excepting the divine powers of the omnipotent God) were cause of his health, being in that science both singular and excellent.

What hapned to the Duke with the Soldan. How the Knight of the Golden Image and the Princess Persiana were challenged for the deaths of Don Gallaneo and Galfeo, by the fearful Relistone and his brethren: and how the challenge was accepted.

Soon as the Duke was arrived at the Soldans Palace with the company mentioned in the precedent Chapter, and thinking it unmeet to aduertise him thereof, they all dismounted and on foot entred the great Hall where the Sophy sate: who, when he saw him come with his blood changed in his face, as being the man that mortally hated the Duke, which now being nigh him humbled himself on his knee, requested the kissing of his royal handes. You need them not Duke (said the Sophy) since you account your deserts so meritorious, and of your self so highly, that I sensing for you to appear before me, utterly denyes it, and with all your power resisted my commands. The Gods for this I should have committed any such offence (repayed the Duke.) And well do you know your Sovereign that I never refused in any your affairs, to hazard both life and my whole estate in your service. But doubting your highness (being full of ire) would not hear me, according to the justice of my cause, I rather chose to withstand my self to my longing, where to this instant I remained: from whence I was called by these noble Kings to appear before your mightiness. So being in this conference, there entred the King this Gyants, the greatest, wildest, and fiercest that any humane nature could produce: they were all armed saving the heads, whose helms and shields were borne by their squires: on them attended 30 Knights, not much inferior to them in highness: all their outward garments were of mourning cloth, who went directly to the Soldan, began thus with a voice, whose hollow roaring made all the Hall resound. **W**ild and mighty Lord, we beseech that small is the notice come to your ears of us, having but little traced thy dominions although we have endeavored with all our power, and the utmost of our desires, the advancing of your house by our service, whereof your son the Prince Perlaneo is a sufficient witness, as the man in the war of Antioch being termed the Knight of the Images, we assted, of him may you

you know I am King of Cyprus, otherwise called Fellicone the
 fierce, brother to these knights here present, that knowing you
 married the Princess Persiana to our cousin Don Gallaneo of
 Antioch, we came to honour his Baptism, and arriving near this
 city, two of my knights whom I sent to seek two samples of my
 company were slain, by one which I understand to be called the
 knight of the golden Image, of whom there are also many tales
 bruted of his halow. Whosoever we were certified that he and the
 Duke Alfron slew in the Touny most treacherously, the Prince
 Don Gallaneo and his cousin Don Galfed. And though we are
 assured that you will execute on them the punishment that so vile
 treason requires, (for we have understood the imprisonment of
 your daughter the Princess Persiana, consent to their deaths.)
 Notwithstanding we being persons to whom this aloof state mat-
 ter concerns, do accuse as well the Duke as the Knight of the
 golden Image, with the Princess Persiana your daughter, as au-
 thors and actors of their deaths, and therefore traitors and male-
 factors. And I now to approve it against them both together, or
 with what knight the Princess shall appoint in her defence: for
 I will not be counted a Giant nor King of the land where any of
 us is known if I make them not presently confess this their trea-
 son, that you may chastise it as you shall better judge: and here-
 with ended this speech. The great rage conceived by those knights
 hearing themselves called traitors, cannot be sufficiently express.
 The Soldier understanding of the Giant what he was, rose from
 his seat to entertain him as his state required, intended him to sit
 down. It boots not (said he) but only that ye stand for these tra-
 itors, to answer my objections: for I have promised not to put off
 my arm, till I be satisfied with my revenge. The Duke stop-
 ping even where the Giant was talking, whom when he better
 saw his deformity and bigness (for though himself were of good
 stature, yet reached not to his middle) somewhat feared him:
 but remembering by what valiant knights he was backt, resolutely
 made this answer to the Giants former speeches. If we had not
 heretofore heard, and now by experience seen the great pride (in
 of Cyprus) we had reason to think no humane creature could
 have procured a thing so monstrous, and to her self so contrary,
 though such as thou art, almightie God, from the off spring of so
 vile

With a kind, whereby thou seemest to colour thy evil grounded reasons and arrogant pride, in joyning kindred with the Soldan, our dread Sovereigns. And if in case thou be such a one as thy speech declares, thou mayest obscurest with thy evil deeds his royal Progeny, than ever with words thou mayest amplify it. Moreover know, I am the Duke Asion, whom thou comest to accuse: and whereas thou sayest, I and the Knight of the Golden Image have treacherously slain Don Gallaneo, I reply, thou most falsly speest, which my self am ready to approve in battel, or present my Champion for the same. The Prince Arficio, all this while ready to choke with extreme rage, yet moderately said thus, Since thou art altogether overbelmed in the reasons thou speakest of (Cyprus King) know that touching the Knight of the Golden Image, thou hast most falsly lyed in thy throat: and therefore bring with thee one of thy brothers, or whom else thou wilt. For if thou wilt not stay untill his wounds be cured my self in his place will approve the utmost of thy speeches to be merely false: for he is not a Prince nor Knight, that would have procured Don Gallaneo's death, except forced thereunto, through his great treasons and demerits, yet his cousin, like a vile traitor dyed, treacherously going to murder him in his bed. Don Brianell dissembling his anger, with a scoffing laughter, not suffering the King of Cyprus to reply, said to him, I think King, Knight, or Giant or what thou wilt, thou thoughtst thy challenge would return unaccepted, because no Knight might be here able in bigness and desozm to answer thee, and yet in my opinion, thy pride is far greater than thy body. But passing this, know, that in the Princess Persiana's name, I will make thee thine in combat, against one of thy brothers or thy self, to prove (with the help of the immortal Gods) that in the great untruth breathed forth by thee, thou most treacherously speest.

And seeing we are all prepared to fight, be it presently while the passion of thy fierceness is hot, lest after thou ease thy self by the weight of thy armor overlong wozn. The fearful Giant seeing with what courage and audacity of speech these Knights spake to him, was divers times about to lay hands on his brows, but thereby to punish the liberty of their tongues, he

more esteeming the combat with an hundred of them, then both a furious Bull a troop of little whelps, and being ready to burst with fury, uttered these words to the Soldan.

By the high powers of the Gods (read Lord) if these filg in d-men were not before thy sacred presence, I would have inflicted such heavy punishment on them, that they should be examples to all others as should presume to spea: in such manner to any of my degree. **Ed:** I will this once restrain my self and expect the combats till the Knight of the Golden Image be brought wail of his wound, that my revenge may be the greater: For I mean to wage the fight with all four. For would I have you repaie my words in vain; for I have other times done the like, against an hundred better than the best of them. **Wherunto** Don Brianel made answer.

Dost thou confirm my former speeches in so long prolonging this fight, daring say thou wilt do it against them all knowing us to be such knights, that will not suffer one another to enter the fight with such advantage. Then the Soldan commanded them all silence, saying: that the King of Cyprus accusing three knights the like number must be against him: to wit. the King and his brethren that shall agree thereto. Be it as you shall command (said th King) and my two brothers shall accompany me though in ze willing I would have had this combat my self, against three, four, or more, that they might thereby see how little I esteem of them.

Then the Soldan again commanded silence to be kept, and called the two Lords of Armenia & Tessiancy. with other Lords to counsel, touching the confirmation of the challenge which being ended, they returned, and commanding the Knights and Spanis to attend, he said: Having consulted concerning the accusation made by the King of Cyprus, against the Duke Alfron, the Knight of the Golden Image, and my Daughter, we have found he may lawfully doe it, being as he is the mightiest of his order that Don Gallaneo hath. And moreover, because the Duke himself is accused he may not in person enter the combat: and so much for the Knight of the Golden Image.

Therefore it befores you Duke, to find a Champion to undertake this battel for you, seeing the Prince Arsilco doth it

for the Knight of the Golden Image, and his companion for my daughter, and it must be so; thwith.

So though the Duke seemed outwardly displeased, being forbidden the combat in person, yet was it not so: for he greatly feared the Gyants forces: Nevertheless he answered the Soldan in this manner, Saying I must seek a Champion to defend my right, grant me some time (dead Sovereign) to doo it. I give you said the Soldan, twelue dayes. wherein look to it, and consider on all things you shall need. that after you complain not, I have done you iniustice. Then was the Princesse Persiana sent for, that she should agree that the same knight should be her defender. On this message went the Kings of Armenia and Tessienty, and also to bring her, who acquainted her with all they had therein laboured, according to her request, and that the King of Cyprus being come to the Court, had not ascended her alone, but also the Knight of the golden Image, and the Soldan sent for her, to see if she would allow the adventurous Knight for her Champion. Whereupon being conducted to her fathers presence, she presented her self before him, but he sternly looking on her, said: Consider Princess on the answer you must make before the King of Cyprus. She answered, she knew not his demand: then had she it reiterated: Whereunto she replied, I know not what I shall answer to such a false and unjust request, and most untrue suggestion: But since you also joyne with me, the Knight of the golden Image, let him answer both for himself and me, to whom I commit my life, honor, right, and service. Was sent not for you to this end (said the Sophy) for the Knight of the golden Image might not combat himself, but let if you will have the adventurous Knight defend your cause or no. I care not if he do (replied she) and yet I think he would willingly accept it, having all right and justice on his behalf. defending the innocency of a distressed Princess: And I beseech the immortal Gods, I may live to acknowledge and gratifie this his great courtesie.

So this (replied Don Brianel) your self (O divine Lady) having so great justice to defend your innocency, maketh me the debtor for this high favour, whose grace hath desired to lay the confidence of so great a charge, on so mean and undeserving a Knight, whose

whose service so, this honour is in perpetual bond to your gracious Highnesse. Upon the end of which speeches, the gages were on either side accepted, and the day of battel assigned to be the next dayes after.

The Soldan commanded both the Duke and Princesse to be guarded in severall strong Towers: and turning to the King of Cyprus, instantly requested him to lodge in his Palace untill the battel were past. The King easily consented thereto, having already purposed, that if he remained Victoz of the Fight, to requite the Soldan to pardon his daughter, and give her him with the Kingdome of Antioch, as his right: being next heir to Don Gallaneo, soz which cause he remained there, where the Soldan greatly honoured him.

The Prince Arfileo, Don Brianell, with the Kings Dukes, and Earls, returned to the Dukes Palace, to tell Don Bellianis the order taken: and entering where he was, they found him now somewhat better then they before had left him, to whom they then declared all that had passed between them and the Soldan, and how the day of battel was assigned, and that the Duke had no champion soz himselfe, and how they had accepted the combat in his and the Princesse Persiana's name, expressing also the great personels of the Spaniards, particularly describing the deformed features of the King of Cyprus, protesting they had never sen the like. Don Bellianis conceived an extreme rage, hearing that discourse, and how the Soldan would not permit him to the combat at such a time, wherein he was reputed a traitor, wherewith being almost besides himself, with more strained surpasse. What thinks the Soldan this shal he suffer, that he hath obtained, and that with so great maliciousnesse against the law of arms, his desire shal be fulfilled? For the powers divine will not permit it. And therewithall he rose and fate upon his bed, and in all haste called soz his cloaths. The Damsels seeing him thus determined, intreated him not to doe it, which he would not, but in all haste made himself ready, resisting all their requests, and also the Princesse Aurora's, and commanded that none should accompany him, save the Princesse then present, that led him by the arm lest he should fall. But a little after the Princesse Florisbella's Damsels followed him,
in

in which manner they went through the City, until they came to the Soldans Palace, who being seen and known by the common people, said one to another, blessing him so saint and weak. Behold here the Knight, which overcome the Knights of the unhappie hyge, and that took the Dukes part in the last turney. Many followed him to know the cause of his so going in such disposition, who being at the Palace gate, sent the Soldan word he traie come to speak with him. When it was so told the Sophy, he was at table, accompanied with the King of Cyprus and his brothers, who understanding he was there, commanded he should be admitted to his presence.

As this the Knight of the Golden Image (demanded the King) whom I come both to accuse and challenge, for the treachery he committed by the death of my dear cousins. This is he (replied the Soldan) and do assure you his peer the Sun shines not on, to equal him in strength and valour.

What may he (said the King) among such as himself: and it were a blot to my honour, to make any account of a hundred such as he. You wrong your self to think so (answered the Soldan) for if he should enter in the fight, I would not for the world assure you of the victory: and therefore I ordered what I did. Now you have told me so (said the Gyant) it behoves me in any wise to crave the Combat against him; for if I should not, I am for ever dishonoured. I will have no more words hereon (said the Sophy) for in doing otherwise I should not be revenged on him and the Duke as I desire. The King disdainfully laughed at his words, and said. If the others that in this battel shall enter, were as you make him, yet should my will be accomplished: But since you will have it otherwise, I yield unto you. Whereon (said the Soldan) give me your hand and word, not to accept at this time any battel against him. I promised you, so to doe (said the Gyant) though it be to my lasting blame.

CHAP. XXII.

What speeches passed between the Knight of the Golden Image and the Soldier, and how he was stayed in the Pallace till the end of the Battell.

DOn Bellianis being before the Sophies presence, shewing no kind of duty, thinking that one of his state, & pretending such a challenge should rather seem stern and fierce, then humble & mild, though his weakness through the grievousness of his wounds was so great, that no Knight under the cope of heaven was able with such patience to endure half the pain that he perforce sustained: which notwithstanding, with a clear voice that he might be heard of all the assembly, dissembling his sorrow as much as he could say.

I am (most mighty Lord) forced to come to your presence in this manner as you see, by hearing certain things that here have been debated in prejudice of my honor and reputation, which most exceedingly have augmented the pain and grief of my great sickness: for which cause I fear I shall not be able to utter the imaginations of my penitent heart, with so great decorum and reverence as appertaineth to so high a personage. And I protest I had not hither come, but presuming on the equalness of thy justice. The Soldier seeing him in such distresse commanded him ere he further proceeded, to sit down, a chair being brought him he humbling himself for the courtesie, sat him down, being in such case, that he had like a thousand times to have sounded as he stow, through the great debility of his body. But drawing strength from his never fainting courage (seeing that Fellstone the fierce gazed on him) resting astonished at his great monstrosity turned to the Soldier, with these words. If according to the justice of my cause, most mighty Lord, committed to the administration of those men, to that end placed by the immortall Gods on this terrestrial ball, promising large guerdons, in their future life of everlasting happiness, if with equity & right, they execute the function of so high commanding powers: wherunto the spacious Territories of your vast Empire binds you, you look into this whole matter, searching the true grounds thereof, not suffering the unbated passion of base partiality, to blind the eyes of your admiring judgement, which most often is wont to obscure, and utterly with ignominy, belinks at

the magnanimity of the noblest minds. When I cannot but greatly marvel for what reasons you have so farre proceeded in my attaires, seeing my selfe endeavored with the utmost of my strength to shew my prostitute service to your highnesse: whose gentle regard might have bin the cause that the least reason proceeding from your royall self, should have consentedly satisfied me at your command. And I hold by the Immortall Gods no reproach should have scandalized your mightinesse, nor any insurmountable stained the honor of your state, if my selfe had bin first heard, and my consent granted to the assigned combat. For in my judgement it is against naturall reason, that I being willing to defend the truth, (whereof my own heart only can bear witness) another altogether ignorant thereof, should in my cause endanger his liuelife. Touching which I cannot see, nor yet conceive, on what foundation you should build your rash decree, to suffer the accusation of the Duke and the Princess your Daughter, who in no respect could be partakers, nor counsellors in what is past. For if I bein Don Galico, I did it because he treacherously would have done y^e like by me, that was then altogether suspitionlesse of any such treason, which fact made me after verifie my suspicion (seeing in what perill of their liues Don Gallaneo endangered my companions in the Turrey, that forced me to shed his blood as he would have done theirs: In which action I should then rather have hoped for a more larger guardon for his good deed, then now to procure new combats: for it were high dishonour to your high name, that such as he, turned to traitors, treacheries, and villanies, should be accounted the son of so great a Emperer, having not only used such a contrary practise against strangers, as the Emperour Don Belianco, but also against his owne friends.

Wherefore you may most certainly beleue, my selfe being now informed of the truth, I have understood, that he lost all his hardnesse in the same fight, whereby they were allaine, whilst he myselfe lay dead with his cousin Don Galico. And moreover he was attainted against your selfe and dignity, in thus perswading you, that the Emperour was dead; or by him mortally wounded, that he could by no means escape death, whom at this present he liueth, and is in perfect health: whereof fearing to be accused by me and my companions, that were heretofore assured by a relation

of them

adventure, he procured our deaths : mine in the Dukes Palace by Don Gallico, while he so did the like of my companions in the Tourney, where if he receiued his condisign deserts through so pitie-
 thofe death, his be the losse : wherefore since there is none can bet-
 ter bear testimony of this truth then my self, not only against the
 knights here present, accusing us, but also against all those
 which shall challenge me hereof, I will ten dayes hence answer it
 them in fild, any appoyn: it on their hel plumed burgonets :
 neither will I haue you (whatsoever may befall us) deny them
 the combat, wherein I will make them know the great treche-
 ries which they would haue used against us. And if you shall re-
 fuse to do me this iustice, assure your self I am a man able more
 strictly to require it at your hands : For the eternall powers of
 the heauenly and earthly orbes, haue not intuled so little courage
 in my uncoloured heart, that any fear but theirs should want my
 mind: where he ended his speech, not able to proceed any further.

The Soldan all this while stood gazing on him with great ad-
 miration, in his doubtfull breast reboluing many things, saying to
 himself, that his like for courage, he neuer heard of, and greatly
 wondered who he should be: that in such open terms durst presume
 to defie him to his face, and in his own land. But as a man not
 able to restrain the reins of his passion, wanting the chiefest thing
 wel and iustly to iudge of matters, shaped him this unbecoming
 answer, holding the King of Cyprus by the hand, that willingly
 would haue first replied. Think not, knight of the golden Image,
 that in what is done you haue receiued any dishonour : For it is
 not lawfull you should enter combat in your proper caule : For
 looke it good or bad, you would (howsoever it might happen) pro-
 cure the good successe of your pretention : for I am perswaged you
 fight by trehantment, seeing the knights of the unhappy blisde
 were not able to endanger you. And therefore is it reason none be
 admitted in battell against you : and concerning the rest of your
 threats, you shal see what you may, if the time will permit you. For
 in while the gods haue made me Archduke over so many territories
 it is should not accomplish the utmost of my will, in which sort you
 shall see you remain in my Palace, until the good or bad suc-
 cesse of the combat be by trial known, that according therunto my
 pleasure may be fulfilled to the full.

But the King of Cyprus being very big sweln with such ex-
 stream pride that he was ready to burst, said to Don Bellianis with
 so hideous voice as he if wold swallow him down alive. Great is
 thy desperate madnesse Knight of the Golden Image, that I
 know not where thou shouldst be born: For with my only sight
 I was wont to terrifie others both mightier, & in courage harder
 then thou. And now thinkest thou to escape unpunished, I assure
 thee, that if the end of the battell, consisted in nought else, but with
 the first encounter of my lance to bring thee to such extremity,
 that thou never shouldst be more able to enter any other fight:
 whereby also we should after eschew the Soldans judgment in
 this case, thou shouldst thereunto be admitted. But because thou be-
 ing convicted with the treasons thou hast committed, he determineth
 otherwise to chastise thy insolency, and so hath suspended thee from
 the battell.

I have no great need to attempt it (replied Don Bellianis) for I
 am sure thou shalt have to do with such Knights, and when the
 combat is ended it shall be publickly seen, that I am not of con-
 dition like thy trecherous cousins.

But I desired with my own person to rid thee of the great
 doubt that thou art in, and after to require account of the outrage,
 thou offeredst to two Damselfs of my company, upon whom thou
 diddest shew part of thy consanguinity with the traitor Don Ga-
 lanceo.

All this Don Bellianis uttered, the more to enrage the enraged
 Giant, to make him accept the Combat with him, though he needed
 not to spur a forward horse: For he was impatient to see himself
 upbraided with such opprobrious taunts, in presence of that royal
 assembly: but he had as is afore-mentioned, promised the Sol-
 dan to the contrary, who fearing they should attempt more then
 words, said to Don Bellianis,

Whereon knight talk no more, for what is decreed shall be executed,
 As it as you have said (answered he) but by the way, remember
 the great injustice you offer me. The furious Soldan would not
 answer him, but by his commandement he was committed to a strong
 tower, and most surely guarded leaving with him the damselfs of
 the Princess Florisbella to cure his wounds.

Artileo & Don Brianell, fearing by their speeches to make swell to
 the

the kindled fire, said nothing but desiring the day of combat were come, returned to their lodgings. Sending straight ways for the knights they heretofore had sent to the tower, whose help till afterwards greatly availed them. The Duke when returned in his palace very glad, thinking both to execute both the Duke, and the Knights of the golden Image, and likewise quieted the King of Cyprus, that much surprised him to see Don Bellianis to enter in the combat al- though he might better to his content be conveyed the way for all his treacheries.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Don Bellianis disguised, issued out of the Tower. What happened him with Don Coninmeliano of Phoenicia, and how hee returned unknowne into the City.

ALl necessary preparations being ordered against the day of the famous Battell, ten dayes were past of the appointed time, and yet the Duke had not nor could find any, that would in his behalfe undertake that Combat which extreamly grieved him; yet the magnanimity of his courageous heart permitted no outward shew thereof. So little was the sorrows of the beauteous Persiana sustained, continually beseeching her Gods, not to suffer her honours to wacke, nor the downfall of her Fathers name, through want of a Champion to maintaine the justice of her cause.

On the other side, the great anguish of mind that Don Bellianis conceived cannot be exprest, which was so grievous, that his Da- msel could by no means diminish nor himself could find no re- medy for his troubled fantasies: but at length he recovered his weak strength, that he was able to walk about his Chamber, feeling himself in disposition to tucke on his armour: And certainly had he but it, and his sword he had broke forth among the strongest watch that guarded him, which in the day time were above 30. men and in the night that number was doubled. In the mean time he used to send one of the Damels to know if the Duke had got any to fight in his quarrell, and when he heard of none on whom he might

trust so weighty a charge (though he had many good and valiant
 knights) by reason of the fierceness of the King of Cyprus, and his
 brothers, his grievous passions were resolved: One of his Damsels
 that accompanied him by name Floriana daughter to the Duke
 of Tarsis, being Lord of many countieles under the Soldan of Babilon,
 which was the chiefest and best beloved of the Princeles Florisbella.
 The other was daughter to the Earl Cellanea, named Persiana.
 But the first said to Don Bellianis, the sorrow of my grieved
 heart is such (renowned sir) to see the course of these things, that I
 cannot in words shew it, as also seeing you cannot use your valour
 to remedy them, wherein your life and honour both depend. Wherefore
 revolving many things in my troubled thoughts, have in the end,
 aspying on the rare courage of your admirable strength, though now
 made weak by trecherous designs & sinister occasions, devised this
 as the last refuge to redresse these wrongs, and this it is. You know
 that we oftentimes go forth unlooked for, mistrusted of the guard.
 Now may you disguised and attired in the apparell of one of us, ha-
 ving no hair on your face, get abroad, where you may easily procure
 horse and armour, & do what you else think best, returning unknown
 unto the Palace, and there undertake the Combat, and in y mean
 time I will remain in bed, feining to be you, suffering none to speak
 with me, saying I am extreame sick. Don Bellianis was so joyfull
 with this unlooked and unthought remedy, as hardly it may be ex-
 pressed; Hoping thereby not onely thereby to assure his owne life,
 but also his companions in that manifest danger, though he nothing
 doubted their valour, and embracing the Damsell said. Pray unto
 the Gods (my good friend Floriana) that these troubles may have
 their desired end, & then I promise you this great care shall be fully
 gratified to your content. There is no reason (replyed she) why you
 should bind your self to any such gratification, without ascert se-
 ting my duty boundeth me to your perpetuall service, and so think not
 much of this I counsell you. And I intreat you govern your selfe
 well abroad, for being yet weak, you might fall into some other
 greater danger. Whereupon seeing the night approached, he put on
 Floriana's apparell, where with he began to saie, that the Damsell
 not a little wondered to see him so beautifull, that Persiana cryed out,
 Is it possible, oh Gods such beauty should be on earth, thou hadst been
 better reserved to to glory by your Imperiall thrones, unless here
 you

you will inhahite to manifest your great powers among us.

And truly (Mr Knight) such beauty was never there but in the
 Princess Florinda our Lady of Mirrors; And well is it to be
 thought you are not of ourselves able to make words by repetition
 as by the Princess our Spillards; whose only light RUMOR (though
 not out-sight, yet with living scale; like the murdering eyes of a
 sleeping Basilisk. Is her beauty so admirable to cause such altera-
 tions in men: (demanded he) You cannot believe it, nor we set down
 (said Florinda) the greatness thereof. And because you may know
 I weare with me so great a beauty as yours, I will web it you;
 which I continually carry with me.

And to the pulld it out of her pocket and gave it him, which he straight knew to be the same, that was portrayed on his shield, though his was more lively, and for all he believ'd it continually, did never ask whose it was, imagining no such perfection could be on earth, and that Bellona had only set it there for a Sign: When suddenly he was wounded to the heart, with the irresistible dart of all-conquering Love, & not able to withstand it, was drawn with the fire that lasted all the days of his life, and did long to great desire to see the substance of that shadow: that straight he would depart thither, leaving all things he had then in hand unfinished.

In this new accident was he a good while, not knowing how to relieve himself, save in fixing his longing eyes on that happy picture, having no more colour seen in a dead man, whilst the Damsels facing, and thinking his thing had caused this alteration, held him by the arms lest he should fall, he recovering and seeing himself touched through shamefastness with his face with such a vermilion blush, that he redoubled his thanks, to whom he said, "What strange point of passion do you see? which made us lose sense and virtue, has befallen you in that strange choice?" To which he replied, "A sudden grief surprised me in my last sight to see one, that it almost burnt up my brains, and left me of my wits little. It is no wonder if the cause thereof (said they) will be my death, and we will die it." He said no more (in which they were happy) for he said no more. And they say you give me this picture, and so much resembling another I have. It is at present unknown, replied the Knight, but take here you love it not? for if you do, it will end you young.

Liberté

Then he taking his leaue of them leauing Floriana a bed in his bedd, went out of the Chamber, to descend the tower, and by the way he met the Kings of Armenia and Terschany, that came to visit the Knight of the Golden Image; whom he knowing, said in presence of most of the guard: Your Majesties may not enter, for the Knight of the Golden Image is a slep, and so sick, that I feare he will hardly scape the danger of these wounds; and I come to tell these Knights that for a few days they should suffer none to visit him, for it would be very troublesome to him, and now I will goe to know what the Duke determineth about his cause.

The Kings hearing this would goe no further, but charging the guard to let none enter his chamber returned back leading Don Bellianis with them, whom they knew not through the obscurity of the night, and had it not been, his penitence and sullen melancholy, they could not but have known him by the tallness of his body, although he stooped as much as he could, and being all without the Pallace, the Kings would accompany him to the Dukes Tower, but he thanking them for that courtesie would not suffer them, and so departed going alone, and being nigh the Dukes Pallace, he espied his companions talking with many Knights, and because he would not be known he took another by-way, which led him without the City gate, through which he went till he came to a late grove of Trees somewhat out of the high-way, where under a spreading beech he lay till the Mone began with her light to shew herself, there was he surprised with the remembrance of the beauty of the most honourable Princess Florisbella, which he so contemplated, that he was carryed away with the deep imaginations of her divine perfections, that he knew not whether he were in Heaven or in earth, and drawing forth the picture that the Damselfe had given him, with heart-breaking sighes, he uttered these words proceeding from the bottom of his love-sick soule. O divine most Angelicall beautie of the absolute Princess living on this murtherous, unhappy isle the hour wherein I heard the name and more unfortunate, when my eyes were captivated in the admired sight of thy pictured beautie, for seeing the sole shadow of thy nominated rareness, with the power to draw me in heave's soule for wanted passions, what then will the substance of thy immortal deitie doe, when the fruition of that sight shall robbe me of my

While gazed on their wonder, a rape swift striking contemplation thereon, suddenly turning the light of his delirious object. So roused Don Contumeliano, who not knowing what to do, layed himself down to sleep till it should be time to enter the city, which he did, mounted on his paces horse in which city he never had been, before taking his leave, directed the horse to go to court: where he leave him to return to Don Bellianis, travelling through the woods as usual.

CHAP. XXIII.

What happened to Don Bellianis in the Court, arrived in Don Contumeliano's army, how he recovered the Battell, His talk with the Princesse Persides before the fight, and what befell him in the same.

DON Bellianis going through the woods (as is said) came at last to a cave, where he waited the shepherds used to refresh themselves, saying he being so fit his horse might move easier, then Don Contumeliano did mount him on his back and so went in any straight put off his own garments, and dressed him as well as he could, having no help much some he put his female clothes, covering them with some rough skins he cut with his sword, that none that there should be the night think them otherwile: and so took the way to Persides, at such time as the glow or all light began with his companion, they in turn the dusky day, and chase the darkness from the sky, when the sleeping birds with their melodious voices, raised the sleeping swallows before carrying notice of the morning, which made them thought the to the passionate passion of the morning, which made them to be regarded not to stay, and thus they were seen to be seen themselves at the city gate, which entrance he came to the lodging that Don Contumeliano did take, who being in the day, mutually loving each other put them under a stone: whereupon he took another page, and followed Don Bellianis to the palace, to know the end of that adventure, and by the way were greatly admired of all men the one for the valour of his person and the other for the sumptuousness of his apparel (as before is mentioned.) Don Bellianis lighted at the Court gate, and having news to hold his horse, Don Contumeliano said, give your horse to my page, who

I shall look unto him: For though you know me not, yet am I bound
 to do you any service. Don Bellinus regarding his courtesy, as
 he be requir'd, and said, Don's labors (as I might) cannot but
 procure a happy success to my enterprise. And taking him by the
 hand, passed into a long gallery where they sent the women wives
 of their country, coming accords to his presence: many of which
 they entered, and found him talking with the king of Cyprus who
 then with his brothers began to arm himself, as for the fight he be-
 lyrefacing, laughing their eyes with much merriment, and saying
 that the women and children were not able to withstand them in
 the field. And when they saw these knights enter in so rich armour
 and apparel, with such gallant outdoing they were amazed there.
 They bring before the nobleman, who then on the ground, demanding
 his princely names to know them who so bravely had them up, and
 embraced them, and said they might as well know their names, and
 what they came for. Then Don Bellinus began to speak, saying (as he
 Lord) the Duke Alphonse has sent me here, saying that you shall know
 what he requireth. As he said, he sent for him, and he came with
 him with a thousand men, and not knowing the cause of his
 sending for, was very astonished, saying that he to be the last of his
 generation, for the fall of his name, and that he had got no cham-
 pion to defend his right by. Then Don Bellinus said that with
 an audible voice that all might hear him, that he would defend
 of Syconia, and implore the nobleman, of this great realm, and he
 knoweth I am called the Solitary knight, if my name be ever con-
 fracted from care, for unto the king of Phoenicia, who havinging
 hour the world in search of strange adventures, hath he chosen
 taken in this your kingdom, where I heard the duke of that the
 king of Cyprus, otherwise named the Giant, had taken the duke
 both dead, and also the Duke Alphonse for courteous, and other
 friends of his company, as also against the daughter the noble-
 one Perilous, touching the death of the prince of Antioch, who he
 saith he treacherously did, and he well knoweth the Duke Alphonse,
 though his memory now not comprehend any remembrance of his
 labors (as he sayeth) and he should be worthy of nothing against the
 laws and duties of a good knight. But to be brief, I am resolved
 to undertake, and fight the combat for you, be both woe to be it am
 I intreat him to grant me, for though I deserve not he should fight

me thus to cross a charge, for my sword, and the lance herein
 shall supply my hand. I will strike all away which annoys him,
 knowing he was of an noble blood, that death cannot hurt is terrible
 and renowned, giving thereby the victory over his sword.
 The wound was deep, which I thought every time as to be great
 according to his name, to his great honour, since as he would
 not willingly loose it, I will do my best to help it healed in the
 night, yet mending his wound, I thought he was, that may try our
 might, but that the wound was deep, and the pain another no
 what more you had said, I thought that I knew not why they
 should excuse this, saying nothing but the losing of your
 life, all shall be as when the year, (reply'd Don Bellianis,) The
 Duke hearing this, he said, I am a knight, I will call to mind
 much (excellent prince) which my sister should tell you to
 succor me in my greatest need, but I do not say believe, the im-
 mortal gods will send you succor, they will not suffer to great
 bulinary to proceed further, but here this is a great loss taken af-
 fecting me of your safety through your incomparable courtesy, &
 more valor. I grant you the right and valiant you take all
 right and justice you may desire, I am so persuaded (said Don
 Bellianis) Am therefore say no more, but who is your accuser?
 The King of Castile hepp'd to say, I am so, therefore he is
 still that he is a knight, but the prince will I now maintain it then
 at this, (said Don Bellianis) In the court there can be
 no reason nor justice, if any thing were attempted, the great in-
 juries with this, he said, and coming through order to the fire,
 intreated the Duke to command the soldiers to be brought into
 the hall to bring all arms they had, bidding to lay the sword
 Don Bellianis was in great haste, thinking it would be broken
 by him and in the court, some of them and the went for the
 prisoners, and coming Don Bellianis saying, they found Princes
 alive in the place, but for sorrow that an hundred times he came
 to show that was dead, he was a knight, he was the late the
 great Duke of Castile, very noble in name, he was a knight, you knights
 for the Knight of the cross, I was told in the extreme pain of
 his life, the Duke (said they) will send us for him to carry him
 to the field, he (said they) where he was, but I beseech you to
 that not, and I will go with you to the Duke, and for what he
 will

will command. Witherrupon they went to the Deputy Justice bar, who declared upon oath in legal talk Don Bellian was. The Justice remonstred he should not be rewarded, and that the Count de him should nothing, he was indeed nothing but a tale (said he) and seeing the night that was approaching the combat, the Justice then to be Don Bellian by his gallant ornaments, and the beauty of his body, was amazed to see him furnished with so rich armour: and returning to the tower told a Florentine, who with her greatly rejoiced, saying she should see that Don Bellian would obtain the victory: and so they together, & he himself to be chosen in the numerous house of that name by that name called him when they named her.

At the time that the Countess and the Duke came to the field, finding very pleasant. The valiant Don Branciel and Antile, were surprised how the Duke had gotten a champion who was given them, because the experienced knights would not make contentment and leave at their gun strokes, and so mounted on their horses. The King of Armenia did hear that Don Branciel's sister, and Antile's wife were by the King of Tenedos. The Duke Gariano did hear on point, and the Countess of Branciel to the effect, and in this manner they were accompanied to the field with the count of many military instruments, where at that time they met the Countess of the Golden Image, whose name and birth born by Don Contumeliano, whose gallant appareling every one admired to think he should be chosen to fight by him, and all they joining together, most lovingly saluted each other, and entered the lists, where they alighted without any difficulty, prepared for them till the Duke's coming, where Don Bellian saw the beauty of his armour richer girl than any else he had seen, and the Countess of Branciel, and in the midst of them were brought the Countess of Parma, and the Duke. The Countess was amazed when she beheld that appointed for her son, & she remained among the guard, who stood themselves round about the yard, for the better assurance, both of the persons and casualties. As soon as the Duke entered the lists, he made a terrible amaine with the noise and sound of drums and trumpets, that the soldiers could not hear any other. The Countess, for fear of their rebellion (which was known by the Countess) and mounted on horseback, to avoid the tumult of the Countess, who then appeared in front of Don Bellian, being so many eyes

lied on him, desirous to be no lesse then he was wont, let one hand on the pinnell of his Sabole, and lept therein not setting foot in the stirrup, and with the force he put thereto, the blow issued out of his armes from the wounds that were not yet whole, which skin of many, they counselled him to leaue the combat being so sore wounded. The Princesse Perlana sent him word that he should come to her, for she would speak with him, which he did, where she intreated him to mount aloft. The guard seeing him go alone did not let him: which was at such a time that the Princesse Aurora arrived, well accompanied who was conducted to that scabbold. Wh. the two Ladies entertained each other with such countesse, as belonged to their high states. And the Princesse Aurora seeing that knight there, demanded why he was not called. To whom the Princesse Perlana replied, should straight know why, and so softly that none might but they that might hear, said to him. By the life of that thing which you most love in this world (most noble knight) and so the immortal Gods may blesse you, with the everlasting glory of a most famous victory at this present, and most happy success to all enterprises and adventures you shall undertake, I do intreat you to declare your name, for either I am now blind, or I do certainly know you, having dreamed this night, that I was delivered by the hands of a knight I greatly affected, and so would I know it (though I think it impossible you should be hee) which you may assuredly do knowing how it behoves me to keep it secret.

And here the History saith, that she indeed did dream that night, she was delivered by Don Bellianis: who made this answer. I cannot conceiue (said Princesse) wherefore you should desire my name, having nothing lesse therein, but to increase your sorrow, yet know I am your knight of the Golden Image, and so pardon me for you shall know the rest hereafter. Wherewith he bestowed, least he were suspected, though every one thought the Princesse did but to outage him with the justice of her cause, who was advertised by Don Bellianis he should not lose that secret by no means, neither to his fellows, nor to any other living, and mounching a horseback, the Spaniards entered the Litter, with their helms on: where the Ladies were much astonished in seeing them and in knowing him to be the knight of the golden Image, something fearing his life, because of the blow that issued from his old wounds yet rested assured

of the victory, marvelling how he should get out of prison and be furnished with so rich armour, and turning to the knights, he saw the Soldan marshalling the field (being himselfe judge of the fight) and placing the knights one against another, and comming to the knight of the golden Image, he said to him, him bloody through his armour. Woe will you enter in fight (Sir knight, being thus wounded: It is no matter (said he) for this onely am I knighted.

The Soldan urged it no more, but withdrawing him selfe commienced the signall of the fight to be given by the trumpets, at whose sound the knights with armed fury, in such sort made against each other, that they rather seemed so many sudden flashes of lightning, renting through the Ayrie passage of the heavens, then men, and horse met in middest of the field, with so mighty encounters, as if so many pieces of Ordnance had bene discharged.

Archico and Don Bryanell encountered the King of Cyprus too, bothers, that all soon measured their lengths on the earth, soe wounded. Don Bryanell, having one foot hanging in the stirrop, that he could by no meanes rise. Don Bellianis and the fearful Felson, so cruelly met, that Don Bellianis shilde was pierced, together with his arm, and the furious lance, yet resting there, penetrated both armour and coats of mail, where his arme was nayled with a piece of the speare to his breast, making there a wide wound from whence issued in fast blood.

But Don Bellianis encountered the Giant in the middle of his shilded shiele, which also was pierced with his breast plate, and the shocke was so strong, that the lance guided by so brave an arme, and the fury of so good a horse, that therewith the King of Cyprus, lost his stirrops and meeting body with body, and breast with breast, the almightie Giant having nothing to stay his feet, fell to the ground: Don Bellianis had done the like, if he had not gotten hold by his horse necke. Who is able to expresse the amazed wonder of the beholders, at that brave encounter, having never seen the like, that they rayed a murmur among themselves, with high praises honoring the extreame valour of that knight who seeing that it behoved him to lose no time, was alighted off his horse, when the King made toward him, more enraged then a fierce battled Bull. But first looking to his companions, perceived the venturous knight to have one leg still in his stirrop, and in great danger, because his
upper

adversary was going upon him, intending to end his life, which easily without disturbance he might have done, wherefore saving his friends sure peril, let apart his wonted courtesie, and ran with his horse against the Gyant, that he returned to the ground, and himselfe leaping from the saddle, went to helpe Don Bryanell, which purpose was letted by the kings coming, that thereby he was faine to stay, to repaire himselfe from the Gyants sudden blow, who raising his bassell-axe would have discharged it on his head. But the knight of the golden Image, seeing he could not help himselfe with his left arme, by reason of the peece of lance that was in it, stepped aside, that the axe strooke on the earth, and therein ran abroad a pard: and going upon the king, was unawares surprized by his brother that he overthrew, who gave him so cruell a blow on his Helme, that made him to bow to a groine, which made the rage to kindle in the knights breast, that very fire sparkled from his eyes, and like a hot chafed Boare, or hungry Lyon, bent to his prey wounded the Gyant that had strooke him, with so puissant a blow on the Helme, that he cut it in two, as if it had bene of paper, sorely wounding his head, that he was like to fall, yet with the strength of the blow his Helm, fell out of his hand, resting to a stonther, that he knew not whether he were alive or dead.

But the knights sword flew in two peeces, that only the hilt remained in his handes, to defend himself in such extreme danger, and of so puissant enemies as those. Who at that time had beheld the two White, Persian, & Aurora, with the good Duke Alfonso, and the colored Damozels of the beauteous Princesse Floribella, that thence beheld the fight, had no need to look elsewhere the pale colour of timorous death. For in their faces was it to be seen to be seen, that no wonder was it to be seen, that they desired no longer life then it might be guarded by the knight of the golden Image's sword.

But the good prince of Portugal, was there like to see the very colour of amazement, seeing all that evil had hapned through the weakness of his horse, and cutting himself, thought his misfortune would for ever appo: him for that cause, which would be the loss of the best knight that ever put on armour. Yet hitherto Don Bryanell could by no means get his foot loose, but

with the strength that he set, drew his horse upon all his leg, that the very pain thereof had almost killed him, until the Trojan rejoiced at this disastrous accident, thinking hereby to effect his desire. The Cyprus King was so highly glad, that hoisting his eye aloft, cried aloud this blow shall execute my will. The Prince Arico that in such state saw his companions, would have gone to help them, but his adversary perceiving it, let fall his semiter, and flung himself upon him, who unable to shun it, did the like, flinging with their excessive strength to overthrow each other.

Don Bellianis though he saw himself without sword, and not able to help him with one arm, was not therefore daunted with the fearfull sight of present death, that he before him saw, but seeing the most fierce Giant come towards him, flung with all his strength the piece of sword remaining in his hand, that lighting on his helm, the force thereof threw him backwards to the ground; and before his brother could remedy it (with admirable quickness which the present danger did augment) he took up the semiter that he let fall, as he said, and leaving the fight at that day, stepped to Don Brianell, and putting the horse girls set him on his feet.

The fierce King that then came upon him, gave him a blow on the head, which if it had not been given him unawaresly it had cloven it in the middle, but not staying there, it descended on the shield, cutting it all overthwart and falling on his thigh parting all the armour it opened his flesh most grievously. Don Bellianis feeling his wound, strake the King, feeling with the heavy semiter, that if he had not larded the blow with his shield, it had cleave cut off his leg yet it thrust in the shield in two pieces to the ground together with his hand and being close one to another the King would have cut his arms upon him, but the knight leapt off, unwilling to be killed: incontinently they wounded each other well, grievously that with their mighty strokes they sometimes bowed their heads to their breast sometime they lanced their knees, and set their hands to the ground, and the King wanting his left arm, it made him to rage like a chafed Bull, that he scarcely felt any of the bright blows. Don Brianell seeing himself rid from his horse, drew his sword, making against the King, but he was stayed by his brother, who met him with a heavy mace, which hee had on his noble pommel well using it in stead of his lost semiter, and so pitously wounded

one another, but that the dangerous knight was faine to helpe him-
 self with his shynelme, to avoide the gnynts intolerable paine, by
 being wounded him in many places. The like of the woundes which
 hee had by him let him his shynelme, into close to it with these sharpe
 strokes, with such admiration of the beholders, as if the uttermost
 judgement consisted in the victory of that battell and none durst
 utter one word but with amazed gaze stared in one another
 successe to see those knights escape that great danger (who's latter be-
 come they beleevied dead) by the great courage and valor of the
 knight of the Golden image, might not compare for his great deeds
 of honour and Chivalry, and whom they so much esteemed. And re-
 turning to the grieved Princeesse, they knew not what to say,
 through consideration of her state, who was faine to belembe it in time
 of sorrow, while she lay there the while of the princesse Floribella
 who for joy embraced each other especially Florina that with tears
 in her eyes, said, O most unhappy maiden that I am, for I never
 gave waite comfort in all my life as any then I did to this knight
 it is yet to be seen, of which I am sure, I am sure, I am sure.

But his weary body nor had hee without company, for in the
 instant my eye had seen such a thing, I would have long had found
 my self from off this matter, that it might be knowne how it was
 sincerity and truthfulness I countlesse him, heere said the other,
 that was that the knight should be with him, heere over his enemies,
 and therefore let us provide all necessities, that to cure the woundes,
 at this time all the knights and souldiers were beleevied in their
 own blood, that where they lay downe, they left their lives panted
 with the same, and to this they were bound, having fought almost
 the whole day, that they were faine to leave it to the king in their hands.
 The knight of the Golden image, who was weary, fainted, and
 tired, withdrew himself apart to breath, which grieves not Don Ro-
 drigo, who being so, as he is, the wife of the king from his arm,
 that disdaine to be thus, it was to him that it was him in extreme
 paine, who was lying up, and downe, in such a way, that his woundes
 were so, that he was faine to leave it to the king in their hands.
 Doubtless his strength, through anger of his paine, whereby he had
 brought the Gyant, with whom he fought, having a mortall wound
 given him before by the valiant knight, to such pass that he
 could not long defend himself, which when the king of Cyprus did

124

For, he would with his courtly are wound the knight, that then he might meet great danger, being taken unawares, but at the instant the matchless Prince Don Bellianis perceiving it being not far from the King, withdrew that his purpose, pushing him on his behalf so strongly that he recoiled back three or four steps, whereby they renewed their fight more fiercely and bravely, than in the whole day before.

But Don Bellianus perceiving that if the combat long continued, he was like to faint through the too little blood he had left, adventure himself to receive a blow of the giant. Which when he saw descended on him, commending himself from the bottom of his heart unto the Almighty, to deliver him from that danger, & thrust at the Giant to bridle under his arm, that being there unmoved, and with such excessive force performed, that the sword ran into his flesh up to the hilt, piercing his heart in the middle, where with he fell down dead. But he was by the Giant cruelly wounded on the head, that he also fell downe in a trance, which grieved every one, chiefly the Princesse Aurora, that was forced to cry out, O Immortall Gods why have ye suffered so great an evil, & without doubt the best knight that ever girded sword to fight. But her sorrow was turned to a general glamme, seeing him amazedly rise and was going to aid his companions who had not seen Ariles at one blow cut off one of the Giants legs, and with another his head. The like did Don Brianell, not regarding his own life, & encouraging him that he would not do it, for he had seen him banquished. Which none they in their hearts render, Immortall thanks unto the Almighty, for their brave and noble service, from so unprofitable perill, and with great love embrace the knight in the following manner, where they imagined to be Don Conqueror, relating to him all the particulars of the victory.

and hereupon (not exporting the Federal command) the general actually points out for e.g. counting a number number lists of all manner of military instruments, running about the fields for plagues, which are the solemn to the heart, leaving no patience to endure it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

What the Knight of the Golden Image did after the battell ended :

And how the Souldan commanded the Duke to bee carried to prison.

SOON as the Princesse Persiana saw the Battell ended, with
 her as every one may imagine, descended the scaffold, and going
 to the knights that were talking together she would have kneeled
 before Don Bellianis, but he prevented it by going to himself, very
 courteously saying : You have no cause, most excellent King, to
 thank me, being bound to see more then this for the Duke Aloron.
 But if you will, then (royall Princesse) gratifie these knights,
 whose valour hath so well defended your right, and justice : for my
 service is of no worth but while it be shadowed under their valour
 deeds. I will not (famous knight) stain the Princesse, or all the
 honour you have won in this battell, with such deere losse of your
 blood, (before the overthrow of such great treachery as was orde-
 ned against us) being more then an hundred knights might attain.
 And since you will not have me rest your debtor for this incompara-
 ble favour, speak to him for whom you undertook the combat, who
 is no lesse bound to you then I. So leaving him with the Duke and
 the Princesse Aurora, she embraced the other knight, using betwixt
 them words of great kindnesse according to their estate.

Don Bellianis leaving the Duke, went to the Dophy (that was
 returning to the palace having commanded his Daughter and the
 Duke to be returned to prison) and being right hard and followed
 by many knights, said unto him, Since mighty King, the truth
 cannot be more cleare and manifest, I beseech your highnesse, com-
 mand that the Princesse Persiana, the knight of the Golden Image
 and the Duke Aloron may be set at liberty, their innocency being
 false and confirmed by the happy success of this battell, which I
 intreat take forthwith, respecting the great necessity the land of
 cure for our most dangerous wounds.

The Dophy that minded no such thing replied : I do believe you
 know Mr Knight, I am not bound to what you say : for if they be
 cleared of Don Gallaces death as you will have it, the Duke not
 understanding is not free of his trespass committed against me, ha-
 ving resisted my will with hostile arms, which being to plaint, I
 had no cause to put it in triall of battell, but referre unto my selfe
 the

the punishment of that fault according as it deserves; therefore talke to me no more thereof, for I will doe nothing more then I have said. Whereto Don Bellianis answered.

Whe expected no such usage at the hands of so great a King, I undertook the fight for all matters concerning the Duke, and if he be clear of Don Gallaneos death, it follows then, that he is free of all other things whatsoever. Reply no more (said the Souldan) for I will have it so: Wherupon he commanded the Duke to be returned to prison, who straight was there conducted; himself going to his Pallace, and would have none speake: wherest Don Bellianis was like to burst for rage. Don Brianell and Asileo requested to go with them to their lodging to be cured: to whom he answered, I have no need of cure since the Duke remaineth imprisoned, and so I humbly take my leave, for I will depart the City.

Wherewith he left them in field, taking his way to the Wood, only followed by Don Conumeliano. The knights and the Princesse Aurora returned to their lodging, reasoning on nothing but on the Solitary knight, whom they so thought never enough praised, having by him received great help in the battell. I should not have belov'd said Asileo, that the world contained such a knight as the Prince of Phancia. You did not see his deeds so well as I (reply'd Don Brianell) because you were busie in combat, and beloe me he no more feared, being without sword, then if he had been confronted with no foes, which if he had not broken, he needed none of our help. Thus talking together they laid themselves in their severall beds, where they were cured having many and dangerous wounds. The Princesse Aurora leaving them, went well accompanied to the Pallace, to see what was done in the Dukes liberty, where she found the Princesse Pediana, that for the words spoken by the knight of the golden Yunge was set free, who received each other as their great love testifies, and after went to see what the Souldan did, who brought them word, he commanded the Dukes guard to be doubled, and that also he had sent the adventurous knight word, commanding him, that since hee would not at his intreaties spare the King of Cyprus brothers life, he should forthwith depart his Land, or else his life should pay the forfeit of his stay.

The Ladies greatly grieved hearing this, demanded his answer; which was that he was contented to obey him within thre dayes, but

but he should regard that he did it against law and justice, which being so he would resist against his will. Since he would not observe them the conditions of the Combat, and therefore he should prepare to entertain him, which more was to: for they determined to be revented at full upon the Duke, who was guarded in his Palace with more then ten thousand armed men, to prevent all occasions of conspiracies against him.

The Kings of Armenia and Tiberias came with him and intreating him not to break his promise, which they in his behalf had made unto the Duke. But he would not beare them.

Whereupon they went to the Duke, to shew to him the wounded knights whom among them they had the Duke and his brother both to free the Duke as themselves had he desired, which cost many lives and loss of many more.

CHAP. XXV.

What befell the Knight of the Golden Lance, and Don Contumeliano, who being at the point of death, was succoured with the adventure of the desperation of Love.

DON Bellianis having left his companions in field, took the next way to the place from whence that morning he came, going out of the City gate at such time that the darkness (through absence of the cleare light and day retreating home) overspread the face of the earth, giving place unto the watry brightnesse of Diana's beames whose pale light increased the paine of Don Bellianis deep staves, as also with out remedying the excellency and albin beauty of his (which all others) fairer then the Blanche Floribelle, whose remembrance made him forget Don Contumeliano that followed him a little after, who being come to the wood and seeing him come towards him began to call together of the Palace Don Contumeliano coming to him said, whether do you want to do? At which he too wounded, leaving the step where you might be hurt. I have no more (said he the knight) of any other thing but your life (which excellent is mine) to heale me. The Patient wondered at these words and thought to his and by what he said should be in the Palace raising himself by his name, that he was so christened to be by his day the Dancell to honour he lent his attention, but any comcomely thanking him for his kind speeches.

speeches, thus said : I cannot expresse the great desire I have, to know whom you are thereby to see the end of the adventure which hapned to me since yesterday at this time : which (by the immortall gods I protest) I cannot comprehend. And tell me what is become of a most faire Lady to whom the last night, I delivered those Arms, whose most deare sight I only wish now to see. Follow me (most excellent Lord, replies Don Bellianis, and I will conduct you where you desire. So they went through those trees, till they came to the Cave, where Don Bellianis had left the Garments, and there both alighting on foot he went thereto (amazing Don Conusmeliano to thinke what should be the end thereof) and finding the robes, restoring them to him, said.

Know you (he) these : He looking on them, answered he did (having engraven in his heart, all the tokens of his spurs) and that he did wear them, that retained the rule of all the world : and therefore tell me the rest, for the more I look on them the more I marvell. Take off my helm (said Don Bellianis) while the Damsell comes. The Prince Don Conusmeliano did so, and gazing on his face, was straight stricken into such a trance, and reeled to amazement, that he knew not what to say : and had not Don Bellianis cast his arm about his neck, he had presently fallen down to the ground : notwithstanding he was in such case, that the Prince was faine to sit downe, and take the Knights head in his knees, while the Page went to fetch for water out of a spring or fountaine, to cast in his face.

But before he returned, Don Conusmeliano a little recovered his lost senses, and with a deep sigh seeming to send his soul after, complained in this manner.

Oy me, unfortunate and disgraced Don Conusmeliano, unhappy was the day thou enteredst to see Perspolis, seeing such great disasters lay hidden in their hearts to destroy thee. O dearth to drive me from myself, how hast thou manifestly shew'd me the great interest I have in the large dominions of Asia conquering love, being entangled in the deceitfull snare of a Ladies garment. Oy me, how many years have I hummed habitable Cities, now to come and dye in this desert land : O resolution I might the best that ever buckled armour, how little do I know of your immortall victories, since you had the heart to captivate me with so cunning sight

might having committed no fault nor cause, nor given any occasion to move you thereto, unless my flatterer had procured my unfittely fatall end. For if you needed my armour, why should you seek such means to requite that of me, which I never could deny any, being thereunto bound by the oath I maintain, unless you desired the defolation of my unlucky life, which he no sooner understood, but sounded again, in such manner, that no remedy that Don Bellianis used could recover him nor yet his Page that was returned, which France was so vehement, that they judged him dead; which indeed he was not far from, being oppressed with so extreme an evil that he lay hopelesse, his heart panting within his body, with his disall spirits kept, that he could neither speak nor heare, that with the intollerable pain and agony thereof, he lay groaning and murthering, expecting the last minute, as those that for want of their natural heat and moisture, without other disease dye. Which so grieved the Prince Don Bellianis, that the tears came downe the eyes of that heroick knight, like streams of flowing waters in such abundance, as if his own dear Lave were in that case, and truly there could be no danger so great, which that Prince would not attempt, for the safety of that good knight Don Contumeliano, rather then to see him so languish in that extremity: Thus lay they a good while judging him altogether dead, and don Bellianis through grief and losse of infinite blood, so faint, that he could not almost stir, where there coming towards them from among these trees a beast the ugliest and deformed that ever he saw, or in the world might be found.

This Beast was so horrible in the sight, casting fire out of her mouth, that for fear of her, Contumeliano was faine fell down almost dead. Don Bellianis as well as he could, rose from the ground (which he could scarce do) taking the Countesse in his arms, which he got of the King of Cyprus his brother, and awaited her coming: whose furious passage making against him was so vehement, that she rambled down all the trees in her way, and being nigh him she alight, handling in her place a huge white Piller with a letter thereon, encompassed about with many fire. Don Bellianis amazed at what he saw, stopped to the Pillar and took the letter, which opening read to this effect.

To the Supreme and excellent Prince of Greece, The sage Bellianis, thy great friend salute thee: Knowing by my art and skill which I continually use for thy sake, the great and mortal danger, which through by means should befall the Solitary knight and also thy sorrow and languishment, therefore moved me to make thee know the manner of his recovery: Wherefore I send this letter by a messenger of mine, that the Piller of wonders might be manifested unto thee. Within this Piller thou shalt see, shalt thou find his remedy, and therefore leave it not untied. Always remembering what I told thee in my lodging as briefly as I could, for therein all my labour is assured: thee I say do thou but so rest thine, as thy life must testify.

Don Bellianis having read the Letter, rejoiced to see there was yet remedy for the distressed Prince, and so resolutely was casting himself into the huge fire to see what therein he could find. But before he could effect his purpose, there came toward him four valiant knights, against whom preparing himself, there also at that time assaulted him four others, big and fierce, who with their wide mouths (as though they cast fire) embraced him, manure all his strength drove him into the same. He seeing himself in such perill, letting fall his axe, would have drawn his dagger, which at his back he had, but his arm was held so fast, that he could not stir it, and turning to see what did it, saw it was a most beauteous Lady, whereupon the Lions and Knights all vanished. Oh God (said Don Bellianis) is this possible I see? Canst thou knight at what thou seest (replied the Lady) letting go his hearted this is called the Pillar of wonders, though it be a long time, since any hath been seen, wherein many have seen some remedy for their distressing to be, yet never ending the adventure, and so with more reason might be feared in a despair of love. And so was it true as in the second part of this history that he saw: for a host came many others, not counted with that deadly wound. And seeing for your companions remedy you here have entered, though it could not be seen but by a third person with you, you now may enjoy the secret thereof, and taking him by the hand, where Don Constantine lay at the last point of life: the Lady carried a blinded soul of the fire, of the pillar, which she cast upon the breast of the Phazician Prince, wherewith he

he straight returned out of his trance, somewhat agate to see himself in that case, and going to rise, Don Bellianis with much gladnesse embraced him, saying: What is the matter (excellent Prince) for your infirmity hath greatly grieved us.

My evil hath been nothing, in respect of the great gladnesse (replied he, I conceale in knowing you, and since I am free of the last deceit, I intreat you of your speciall labour, to manifest it me, not hiding any of your acts. I am content (answered Don Bellianis) to please you therein, but thank this Lady, for your libes liberty.

Which he going to doe, she suddenly returned through that fire leaving every thing, as afoze.

What is this (my good Lord) demanded Don Consumeliano? Whereupon Don Bellianis discoursed that adventure, and how he being ready to breath his last, it appeared, called the desperation of Lords, how he proved it, with what else hapned: And proceeding said; I know not (Soveraigne Prince) the occasion of your extreme passion. Let us talke no more hereof (replied he:) for I assure you, as soon as I felt the coale of fire let upon me, I lost all that vehement dolour and agony; yet not so but that I shall alwayes remember the deceit done me here by the City Persepolis.

And so was it true, for still after when he saw the knight of the Golden Image, his pulses and spirits would beat with alteration, like one struck with an untowt feare. And I pray you let me know your name, with the causes of your other adventure.

My name (replied Don Bellianis) is the knight of the Golden Image, which I am sure you never heard of, and so recounted the rest: how he came out of prison in a Ladies garment, to undertake that combat, as is aforesaid.

Don Consumeliano greatly amazed, when he knew that was the knight of the Golden Image, of whom passing through the unhappy helge, he heard such wonders of, and greatly desiring to have met with such a knight said; I doe now (Sir knight of the Golden Image) altogether beleve and confirm the high deeds published by you, and doe tender thanks to our immortall Gods, that have brought me to enjoy the fruition of your company, and so very lovingly embraced together, knitting betwixt them the inblodable knot of friendship, which all their life lasted, as the Historie mentioneth.

Don Bellianis was married by Don Contumeliano's Page and his wounds by him healed, and attired in Florianæ's garments, which renewed the dying flames in the hart of the amorous Prince, and agreed together, that Don Contumeliano should stay for him in a strong city, forty miles from Persepolis belonging to the Duke Alfiren called Bollera, appointed to be with him within thirty dayes: wherefore embracing again each other, and taking their leaves, they went to see the pillar, to read the letters thereon, which by the light of the fire, there, Don Bellianis thus read,

The Pillar of the wonders for remedy of the dispaire in Love shall henceforth manifested, where every one shall be remedied according to their mood. And if in Love, he never have erred, or in arms beere overcome, by the gurdians here placed by the sage Medea: he that so hath not been, shall not prove himself therein.

What might I have hoped for remedy (said Don Contumeliano) of the guard you here saw, if you had not been here. But I desire to see the end of so great an adventure and how it may be brought thereto: for I think the letters do not shew it. A little lower I think it doth expresse the manner how (answered Don Bellianis) by him that through despair shall hither come. When you shall have I to prove (replied Don Contumeliano) for I never hope for remedy. Don Bellianis greatly laughed at what the Prince said. And so taking leave one of another departed, Don Contumeliano putting on his own armour taking the Giants Curtle-axe in stead of his sword, took his next way to Bollera, where he found all the people very sorrowfull for the Duke their Lord's imprisonment, who was at them greatly hated. He recounted to them what had happened in the battell, and how the Duke their Lord was already at liberty, whereat they were much joyed, and highly honoured him who remained there till Don Bellianis came, as hereafter shall be expressed,

CHAP. XXVII.

How Don Bellianis returned to prison, and what pass between him and the Ladies of the Princess Florinbella.

DON Bellianis, being departed from the Palace of Phaulcon, arrived in the City, when two parts of the night was past, and went till he came to the Solbans Palace, not staying any where though he greatly desired to know of his companions. And thinking to find all the people quiet, he found them otherwise busied, and the Palace guarded with ten thousand men, with many light torches. But he closely passing between them, had nothing said to him thinking that he was some of the Princess Auroras, or Perseus Gentlewomen: and going up to the tower, requested the watch to let him in to visit the Knight of the golden image: they thinking he was a woman let him in, demanding why he had been all day abroad, the Knight being so sore wounded. I could do no otherwise (replied Don Bellianis) and thereupon entered his chamber, where Floriana and her fellows stayed for him: who seeing him come, Perseus ran to embrace him, so did Floriana, who casting a mantle over her did rise out of the bed. Don Bellianis seeing it said. It behoves not (sweet ladies) you should bestow such favours on so mean a Knight especially in so suspicious a place. There is no place to be suspected where such a Knight is, deserving greater favours then those which are the hands of the fairest Princess living. The watching told us sure your name, that you tell us all that befell you abroad: and so making him already late in a bed, and by their hands dressed him. Which done, they gave him his supper to be eat it with a good stomach, having fasted no food in a day and a half before: and when they would have left him, he would not let them go, because he could not sleep, and so told them all his adventure from his departing. And when he spoke of Don Costamachano, they could not stand for laughter.

I am much glad of your success (said Floriana) because you shall not think us fools or what we have said of your beauty, whereby you may imagine the greatness of our Love the Princess Florinbella, and now you may render to us her counterfeits, for you no more need it, let me yet keep it (gracious Damsell) for that I have not yet coated with that in my shield, to which is more naturall

naturall : for the meaning I know is all one. And tell me the reason why The Soldan did command the Prince Pericles to depart his dominions, which the Princesse Aurora was the other day telling me, but she was interrupted by a sudden occasion, and since I have had no time to know it : We have not effectually learned it (said she) but it is thought the Soldan imagined he was in love with the Princesse; and least he should attempt any thing against her honor, commanded him to leave the kingdome, being the valiantest knight then known in the whole universall world.

What loss had there been (said Don Bellianis) if he had been married to her, being so good a knight and so great a prince. I will say none (replied she) to possessions, or any thing else he should have been given to any, he well deserved her. But we thought that according to her excellency and beauty, some of our Gods would descend to the heavens, to enjoy her on earth. And if he had demanded her of the Soldan our Lord, we think he would not have denied her him, but he never would declare his name, which was known after the wars of Antioch.

This they told Don Bellianis, who was greatly discomfited to hear of the love between the knight and the Princesse, as also to hear that every where the wonders of the knight of the Image, sounded in his ears, being so highly esteemed in his fathers country, and so purposed never to rest until he met with him, supposing should never be rewarded, of his Princesse, unless he should remove that knight out of her sight, and so tell to the Damsels : But he had no news of him since his departing, or his he so soon forget the Princesse : So (said they) for it was said he, every day came into the court with severall hosts and armour, and then writ diverse letters to her, beseeching her to receive him as her knight, letting her know he was Prince of his land. Her letter was delivered to us, and we fearing some chull to come thereby durst not give it her. But what answer made you (said Don Bellianis) to him that gave you the letter : None other (answered it) yet might you have given her it. There is none for their lives that durst have done so: for besides that that she doth injure himself being but seldom seen, and abhorring such matters extremely she hated this Prince greatly, because he was the cause that her Princesse Aurora lost her kingdome with her fathers life, which was made

And I think, unless he be reconciled, he will hardly escape with his being thus deeply wounded.

I know not what to say (replied her fellow Prisoner) for it is the strangest thing I have seen. Surely, loss of a Lady should so wound the heart of a Knight, against whom in that the way of Hell-bred brags, and strength of mighty Danils can prevail, and whom we have seen do such deeds, that scarce our Cities can be taken, and this to the greatest of all, that so being a competitor in Love, is offered at this present to the Prisoner's niece. The Knight of the Golden Image is not so great as you seem him (said Floriana) for I well know the one's deeds and great state of the other, and though he be now engaged by the woman, he may be reconciled.

All this know I (said the other) yet is he not like to this if he should be reconciled. And this Knight may be some great Prince, since (knowing the other such for him) he determineth the like.

And as for his wound, you see the world cannot equal it: and also for his honour we are fathers and good husbands. And for my part, though I were sure to dy, I would venture all means to effect his desire, seeing the danger he is in from, and the love we have him and he is never dead as our enemies say in this case. In this they continue till he shall call a truce, till the next morning, that they again debate him. And truly the great pain he had to see himself out of that state, greatly helped his wounds that the Danishes said; he should be dead within ten days, and able to travel, which greatly pleased him, hoping to be quickly in the great city of Babylon, there to possess the sight of his dear wife's prince.

CHAPTER VII.

How between the Princes, Dan Brissell and Arlio, with the two Kings was determined in what manner the Duke Arlion, and the Knight of the Golden Image should bestee liberty: And how the Princess Aurora took with him those men by whose counsell she departed from the Soldans court.

THE Prince Arlio, knowing how the Soldan governed his self with a disordered passion of an unbridled rage, resolved with the two Kings his fathers, whom this matter also concerned because the Sophy had with broken promise, to procure the end of these

determined to return unto the Big man Father, though grieved to the heart, then to visit the bar company that the Big man.

And I do wish that with millions you would cut off the dangers that hurry may bring, that I feel my heart whispers: which if you will not be my interests, there one will remain it is proofed of your fortunate business, following through all things may.

Ande then for the same fault in the crimes of Ponceia in the battle in which he fought poor and without aid, with little courage and cowardly, gave to all name of the heretic, separate, as to signify a king, now to reform and gain the foot of the king, with the name of Ponceia, cruelty and bloody barbarian. And so ended, expecting the Spanish nation, who a little time in dispute, together he should let at home. Don Williams at the last being altogether blinded with a furious rage and ferocity, he seeing no less made this reply.

[illegible][illegible]

The brave and dancrons battle fought in the plain, between the Prince and Knight, with the English power, about the liberty of the Duke of Athens, with the whole success thereof.

AND thus as the bright presence of the sun at setting eye has
 raised his brilliant clouds, so the approach of the noon
 eared, four great impetuous knights through clashing arms and
 pale numerous colour'd banners (as in such times, often happens
 etc) of their fure succed. And the valiant Don Bryanell and Ar-
 giles, accompanied, with the knights of Armenia and Testifany,
 commenced all their way to mount on their horses repeating
 farther off, Don Bryanell called Don Bellianis, and the re con-
 sidered his friends, where the valiant knights stood, and began
 all their friends upon their horses to cry aloud, Friends, the il-
 lustrous and glorious the souls, for the fact of the & the was
 upurged that day, there was no space time of them thinking
 they need to guard the palace, which being come and finding
 the gate was shut, they went upon Pegasus, to mount with such
 furie, that they might have been the first at the first encounter.
 But they perceiving the small number themselves together in
 such sort, that the English had the advantage much more, with the
 ready of an instant number of men, though the knights of
 Testifany could not be deterred, yet he knew even then they are
 another, and the valiant men and their friends among them
 knowing the battle will continue very little, intending to course
 quickly the way, that was to Don Bryanell and Argiles performed
 however, yet they were come late to encounter, whereupon they
 understood the English would be the most valiant, when suddenly,
 there was a shout to many knights that was might well know the
 order, and thus Don Bellianis, who was the first, the valiant knight
 calling his friends about him, and as he his horse, and before the
 flags but ere he was at the end of them, the gates were shut, espe-
 cially the Captain, that would have given him a tremendous blow
 on the head, to have cleaved it in twain, but not be taken it upon
 his sword, whereby he cut his leg in two, but ere he fell on the
 ground (Don Bellianis knowing himself of the other knights
 blows) he called the Captain to him by the name that he took it
 (said)

The Honour of Chivalry.

145

from him, and stepping backe buckled it about his arme, and with them began to brabe, and so cruell a fight, as if as great a number were with him, but the place being somewhat narrow he took all their blows upon his sword and shield his being so ready, that in little time he had throlowne downe dead above thirty knights: whose huge and monstrous woundes, would make any afraid to see them, and so oppress the others, that their clamour and outcries, seemed to over welme the Wallace.

The knights being with the feare of death dismayed and not able to abide the fury of the knight of the golden Image, turned their backs and fled,

Don Bellianis letting them go, armed himselfe with one of the dead knights Armour, and not longer staying, entred the Wallace, where in the great hall he espied the Soldan at the light of torches that were there, who with a troupe of chosen knights was going to succor the wallace which he heard was assaulted by the Prince of Phencia, so that they thought by their adversaries clamor, without seeing, he conceived such rage against him, that aloud he said, I have thee now in time, false Soldan of Persia, violator of thy royall faith and word that thou shalt see howe little thou shalt get by my imprisonment, so know I am the knight of the Golden Image: who is able to set downe the extrem fear that surpris'd the Soldan, at those words jogging himselfe at that instant utterly destroyed.

The knights put themselves before the Soldan to defend him, which Don Bellianis seeing, redoubles his rage, and mangle their force set so furiously upon them that as a wolf among a troop of sheep he beat them down together who not able to resist him, made him large way to passe by them, which he did to revenge himselfe at full on the Soldan, who seeing him so determinate come against him, retired to a burlow falling over a garden, through which for his best safeguare he call himself downe, that according to the tal he was a great tower he beat not out his braine, but he bruis'd all his body, and disloined both arme and leg, the late death above thirty knights following him, flying from the knight, as from the touch of a death-singing Wallack.

The Prince Don Bellianis would have done to such was his hate against the Soldan, but determined first, to see the battell, thinking afterward to have sometime to execute his will, and so turning

to the knights saw them run headlong out of the wallace, and thinking himself in among them, found his companions, that had forsooke the Soldanes men to retire back to the wallace, which they defended like them that expect the fearfull stroke of death: so that Don Bellianis assailing them at their backs, made such desolation of them, that they thought so great a number behind as before, which to bereave them of their senses, that how to resolve, they knew not, till the death giving wound, pierce their daunted hearts, that most of them tumbled wounded and dead. The Duke's soldiers seeing this, began to sack and rob the wallace: the ransacking of whose treasure, was their chiefest hope of gain.

Don Bellianis and Arisco in the meane time rush into the palace, Perissares Chamber, who before her, seemed very grieved and being by the Prince seen, he aloud said, It behoves thee, Princess Perissares to go with mee, in recompence of the wrongs, and imprisonment your father put mee in against Law and Justice, and thereupon took her betwixt his armes, and some other knight did so, by this and there of her Ladies: whose lamentable cries made the wallace to echo with the noise. And so carrying them, were met by the adventurous knight that was coming for her, having set at libertie the Duke that came with him, who with such great admiration and extream joy to see his Lady, had almost tumbled to the ground.

When upon Don Bellianis commences the Campaigne to sound the retreat, so to withdraw the Soldiers and meeting with the King of Armenia and Tiflany, led them to their own quarters, which they easily found, being so given to the spoile. But being united together, Don Bellianis charged the Duke's Captain to commit their arms to their matters, little that was in the king's mind of Persia, which they did with great hast, being their purpose to happily successe was also because there was above 20 thousand men stowd there, who themselves having no goods, staid within the City till the morning, least they should lose themselves in the night. But the Duke's men kept on their way so well, that at the appearing of the Sun they were back by the place where they lay before they left the Princess. And as where also came the Princess and there they all alighted to rest them, where the Princess was welcomed them with the Duke's Aldron, whose gladness was

as great as his sorrow had been, before, remaining together with the other Princes innumerable thanks unto the five Kings for their aid, and confirming an everlasting and inviolable bond of amity that lasted all their lives, as the course of this great Misfortune amply dilateth. And not staying in this place, departed thence, where we leave them to let down what they do.

CHAP. XXX.

What the Soldan did, having understood his daughters losse And how Corollano and Borsaldo his brother, followed the Dukes power, with great troops, with the success of a most cruell battle that passed between them.

WHAT tongue is able to expresse the many & long laments, and lamentable cries made in the Pallace by the popularity and others, which also the Ladies and Maids with their great clamour augmented, for the losse of the Princesse Persiana. When she understood the death of the Princes, she took a most horrible grief, went to seek the Soldan, whom they found in the Garden, as before is mentioned, they took him and his dear son thence to his chamber, and laid him in his bed, and hearing the piteous shrieks of the Princesse, he came to her, which was told him to bee, for that their ambassador had taken with them the Princesse Persiana his Daughter, and her brother the Duke Alphonso, and all that were in the Court, which were he saw in the stream and gold and treasure of their shill almost broke out of his living breast. But then he called a council of his men to be, and counsel was taken to take Corollano and Borsaldo, which were taken the next day, and all the people in the Court to returne to Persia, though he was that he should have been contented to have kept his name, which he refused, and he was carried on his back by his men, which bore him face, Corollano did all like the man accustomed in such company, showing himselfe to be a valiant man, for all their shill. When he was at his death, the Duke Alphonso, with the friends of all manner of valiant men, and all that were able to bear arms, went themselves and went to the Pallace, so that in little time there were gathered above forty thousand men, which in all haste he led out of Persopolis, keeping no order in their

March that their enemies might not get before them, who then were above 15 miles afore.

In this manner they went till they came to a City belonging to the Soldan, where they that night rested and understanding there, how the enemy determined to dine the next morrow at Bolla, thought if he staid, he should not overtake them as he would. Wherefore about midnight he set forward with all his men making such haile, that by break of day he eipted them, descending a hill in good order, which much joyed him, that he presently commanded his Trumpets to sound: which Don Bellianis hearing looking back and saw so many men make toward them that they covered the pannes: it somewhat troubled him, wanting meanes to guard the Princesse. Yet with as much celerity as the time afforded, he wheeled his companies about seeing the Princesse at one side of the mountain, guarded with five hundred Knights: and seeing his men began to feare with the sight of such multitudes, he encouraged them repaying and intreating them to consider that those troops were of little moment, and little valour, coming half vanquished, being only led by the eagernesse of revenge for the slaughter that was made of them, which like blind men brought them to their utter destruction. With this, he took with him the adventurous Knight, the Prince Arislee, the two Knights, and the Duke, and placing themselves before their men, expected their adversaries.

Carolano, being descended on the plain, divided his soldiers into two Squadrons, the one he committed to his brother Rinaldo, and the other he led himself, and imagining what they had done he commanded two thousand chosen Knights, to assault the corner of the mount, supposing that the Princesse Pedana was there, and to with great clamour and furiously run upon the Duke's men, who with their valiant guides were ready to receive them and so terrible were their encounters on that plain that above four thousand of Carolano's Knight were undone, by reason that their horses were weary and tyred, with the haile they had made that they could scant hold out there. Don Bellianis and his companions on their side, observing what he did to the ground dead, and thrashing themselves among their enemies, that they seemed like to make up fires sent for their utter desolation. But the adverse numbers were so many, that they saw nothing discouraged the living, except

ally for that Coroliano so animated the m, that it may be said onl
 upheld the battel. Which Asileo seeing, took a lance from one of
 is company, and made against him, Coroliano did the like and
 met so furiously, that their shields and armour were pierced, and
 themselves refted on horseback sorely wounded, then drawing their
 strong swords, forced each other at every blow to bow their heads
 to the Saddle pummell.

While they were thus in fight, Don Bellianis men through his
 strength (and their enemies having no other captain but the other)
 began to win some ground, with such slaughter of both sides, that
 neither part might well boast of the victory in the end. Which
 things, when Borsalo perceived, would no longer stay nor expect
 any word from his brother, but like an arrow sent from a steeled
 bow, maketh his swift way through their airy passage, so he with
 his fresh Battalion, set against his adversaries, and looking on whom
 he might with most honour break his lance, espied the King of Ar-
 menia, that with obdurate rage massacred his men, against whom rest-
 ing his spear overthrew him therewith, doing the like to the King
 of Tessany on whom he broke his spear. Whereat with a loud
 voice, he encouraged his fainting soldiers, commanding them to
 spare none of their lives that had committed such rebellious treason.
 And so passing along he met the Duke Aliron, who discharged up-
 on one another the fury of their cutting swords, that Borsalo receiv-
 ed a little wound on the head and the Duke fell in a trance, and had
 fallen had he not held by Borsalo not saying there passed forthward,
 proud of the blow that he gave, at this time the Solans men re-
 covered, and began to win much ground inasmuch that Don Bel-
 lianis, nor the adventurous knight, being not able with their valour
 to stay their men they began to retire back: which when the Knight
 of the Golden Image saw, like a chafed Lion wanting his prey he
 thrust himself among the thickest of his adversaries that unhappy
 was he whom his blows reached: in such manner beating and over-
 throwing knights with their horses, that his armour was all cover-
 ed with his sword raked with blood, which forced every one to fly
 his fury, as doth the fearful Partridge, far from the deadly pursuit
 of a towering Falcon. For there was no knight that he met bold
 valiant soldier but with one blow he smote down from his horse.
 And passing thus along where Asileo and Coroliano were sorely

in fight together, both which had such piteous wounds that it moved the prince to compassion.

Here then arrived Boraldo and seeing his brother in such case, and to have the mouth, raised himself in his stirrups, and (unable to be resisted by Don Bellianis that in great haste picked toward him) gave him so mighty a blow backward on the head, that cutting his helm it made a grievous wound, and had like to have fallen, having altogether lost his senses. Which so enraged the heart of Don Bellianis, that very blood seemed to runne down his eyes, so for him to use in his presence. And in this fury he struck at Coroliano (that was discharging another blow on Asileo) which fell with such huge strength that lighting on his shield it divided it in two, and his sword descending on the horses neck, it also cut it off, falling on the earth with Coroliano and his horse. But Boraldo at this instant, wounded Don Bellianis on the one side that piercing his armour it piteously opened his flesh and so swiftly crownd another on his Helm that it cut all his buckles, leaving his head unarmed. Heber was there any Bellianis made indurated nor was more eager of his prey, then Don Bellianis was now burning in fury of revenge. And turning upon Boraldo with one blow tumbled his shield in two, together with himselfe hee wounded to the ground. Coroliano that by this had risen knowing him by his armour to be the mighty knight of the golden sunne, on whose overshield consisted the good successe of his enterprise, thrust his horse into the battle, that he fell dead with his master on his back, which Don Bellianis seeing leapt from him with celeritie, which he had learnt done, but he was assaulted by about two thousand knights that came to also Coroliano, yet this helps little helped him, for Don Bellianis strooke him out of his senses, and looking for Asileo, saw him in great danger fighting with Boraldo in whose helmet many were smitten but he joining with his cousin (having saved his helmet) wounded the furiously on all sides that they had incomparably themselves with carkasses of slaughtered men, yet for all this, they were so oppressed with fresh multitudes, that by no means they could mount on horse back, which Don Bellianis perceiving doubting the anger laid about him that in despite of them he mounted on horse, on which he found what easier laboured in the fight, till Asileo had done the like, wherewith they brake their passage through the thickest of them,

who

whom he mounted Beraldo, that was sorely wounded, and carried
 Corollano out of battall, which grew more cruell then all the day
 before, Don Bellian by mere forced valour, making his way
 through the sharp pointed spears, and strokes, came where the King
 of Armenia and Tessilantie were on foot and like to have taken pri-
 soners, and had they been knowne they had their lost their lives,
 who by his arrivall, got freshly mounted, and together renewed the
 fight more fiercer then at the first. The battell being at this stay
 the 1000. knights that Corollano had sent, assaulted the corner of
 the hill where the Princess were. But the 500. knights, which
 were the valiantest of the Dukes whole troups, left not their charge
 but in those places began so fier a skirmish that fell downe dead on
 both sides. But the Soldans men being more in number,
 brake through them, spolling their order: whereat the two Ladies,
 the Princesse Persiana, and Aurora, seemed more dead then alive.
 But at this time from the other side of the valley, there appeared
 the number of 4000. knights well appointed, which went toward
 that place: from whence there was a knight sent to know on
 what behalf they came, who was an officered kin to be the coun-
 tions Prince Don Contumeliano of Phenicia whose armor they
 very well knew, (as is said:) which greatly grieved the Soldans
 men, judging, that if needfull he would be against them, and in
 the contrary, the Duke Almons troops were very glad thereof
 whose approach revived the forrowful Ladies. And the Duke aloud
 cried, courage, courage, brave knights, and animate your fainting
 faces, against your fear frighted adversaries, for the adme to hon-
 our of those wondrous Chivalry, commeth in your aid. which he
 nothing miske, for in the whole camp there was none that re-
 ed him, except him that in disguised habit had subsgnated his heart,
 with great content and content. which is the true honour of all
 brave knights, he now being come to the dangerous skirmish,
 bravely overthrowing a knight, and slaying him apart, intomed
 himselfe by him, of all that he desired to know and knowing to his
 followers, that were all subjects unto the Duke Almon of whom at
 Don Contumeliano's command, a great multitude had before gone
 to Persopolis, from Belleria to aid the Duke if their help he should
 need, who having here met the four thousand united themselves to-
 gether, so bravely assaulting them, that in the corner of the hill were
 fighting,

fighting, that not daring longer to stay turned their backs and fled toward their othe company, where the furious battell stil continued, entring by that side where Don Bellianis was killing his horse under him, and he bruis'd with the great fall, rose up in extreame danger of his life, for his men began to give back, which forced him with meer strength and sole labour of his valour, to withstand the aduersaries fury laying on all sides to get a horse.

But his enemies seeing him to be their only destruction, rusht in multitudes upon him, no more fearing his death giving strokes, then if he had that day hurt none. Whereby though many died by him, yet was he sorely wounded both with swords, and lances, for though they were not great, by reason of his good armour, yet through divers places there issued infinite blood.

But his aduersaries eager of revenge, procured nought but his death, insomuch that they would often close their eyes and fall upon him because they would not see his strokes, and had not he leapt sometimes here, and sometimes there, some one would have got him fast, which if they did, he greatly hazarded his life.

Yet he could not to defend himself, but that at last some of them despying death, fell upon him together laying full hold on his armes, wherein it behoved him to use his strength, only to get from them, kicking and spurning with his feet, that in the end, he fell down with abode half of them upon him, and seeing himself in such danger, having there receiv'd abode ten wounds, suddenly kept away rising on his feet on the other side, bestowing deadly blows on all sides, that there arose such great and mighty clamours, and outcries that the rest of the battell was nothing to this fight incouraging one another only to kill that knight, on whose death depended their victory.

In this season arriv'd here the Prince of Phenicia with his company that came in pursuit of those that fled, and hearing there that great noise, so haubely set upon them, that they unhors'd abode 2000. knights with which fury, the Prince press'd through them, till he came where the knight of the golden image was, whom he knew (though he never saw him) by the device of his shield, and seeing him do such wonders, said to himself, that not without cause he enjoy'd the name and deserved to be called the sole worthy of admired chivalry: and being about to alight to give his horse unto
Don

Don Bellianis, the mighty Boraldo came thither, to succor his men that here lost their gotten vantage, which they did not on the other side, because he valiantly had withstood the force of the Princes, Don Biranel and Amleco. And spying that knight, straight knew him by his armor, thinking him to be he that had slain the King of Cyprus and fearing his force, durst not like a good knight confront him face to face, supposing that in a battell any thing was tollerable raised himselfe on his stirrups, and with his hands behind his back, gave him so huge a blow, that it made him bend his head lower then his horses ears. Which Don Bellianis perceiving had knowing the Prince and thinking he would have fallen from his horse, ran to help him. But the Prince Don Contumeliano losing no whit of his high valor, at such blows returned upon him, with his sword hoisted aloft, determining at that blow to part his head in two: The other with like intent came also upon him, and at one instant discharged their rage on each other, that Contumeliano was like to fall. But Boraldo lost his senses. The Prince seconded another that there with hee tumbled from his horse, and alighting cut off his head, unlaced his helm, and found him in such case, that he judging him dead let him lie, though it had been better for him there to have made himselfe then for his after harm to give him his life, as this history discourseth. And going to the knight the Golden Image with great courtesie thus said. Pount upon this my horse (most haughty knight, usurper of anotheres heart) and follow the victory, obtained by the Gods, to all your happy and glorious acts.

The knight of the Golden Image replied, Leave not your horse for me (high and renowned Prince) for though I in this battell do miscarry there is nothing lost in respect of your royal person, how much the more that the knights horse whom you have slain sufficeth me. And so mounting on Boraldos horse, the Phenician Prince did the like upon his own, together, so overturned the fury of the fight, that through want of an infinite number of the Soldans men, his captains began to yield the field. Which their adversaries seeing so hotly renewed their decaying forces, that their enemies, were constrained to save their lives, by giving the liberty to their horses, in which flight, being heavily pursued, there was an innumerable number slain, that after the fight was done that of

the Soldans men were slain aboue 25 thousand, with not aboue
tino thousand lost on the Dukes behalf. Which good successe was
by those Kings and Princes worthily attained, every one with
immortall praises thanked him: to whom their deuotion was most
(being in that whole Camp) but only the three Christian Knights.
This done, they went to meet the Princesse that waere comming
to them: & betwene whom their courteous græting and kind sa-
lutes were such, as if they neuer before had seen one another.

Every one greatly honoured the Prince Conuermeliano, some
for his aid in that great danger newly past, the others (that knew
no otherwise) not only for the same thanked him but also for the
ouerthrow he had giuen the fearfull Felikon, King of Cyprus.

At which time arrived the Duke Alsiron, who seeing the Phœ-
nician Prince, would haue alighted, being sorely wounded, but he
would by no means suffer it. Give me your royal white hands (most
excellent Prince) that I may kisse them (said the Duke) in token
that I receiued twice my despised life by your means. Don Comu-
meliano seeing the Dukes error, would not longer seem to rob the
glozy from the victozy by ioying in anothers honour, contenting
himself with that he had won in that battell, and obtaining of his
friends, replied. I will not (magnanimous Duke, and you heroick
Knights) suffer your error no further to proceed, nor longer usurp
the honour of so high a victozy, from him that bindeth all wandring
Knights in the orbed earth to his surp, and being now there is no
danger in discovering it, know (great Lords) that he which hath
won the immortall glozy of the victozy, is your friend, & Lord of us
all, the neuer enough praised, the Knight of the Golden Image to
whom by a strange adventure I lent my armes wherewith he under-
toke the fight wherein besel all that you saw, and delated the man-
ner how he found him, and in what habit concealing nothing but
what hapned after the fight. Which hears of the Dukes, Kings,
Princes, and Knights there present, they highly wondered at his dis-
course whereto the Duke thus said. Now am I not (renowned
Prince) so much indebted as I thought, for having giuen all my
selfe unto the Knight of the Golden Image, he both in taking care
for my matters busie himself in his own, whereby my duty can be
no greater then it was before.

Now having nothing so much cause (said Don Brianell to thank
him,

him, for what he did in that battell, having therein as great a part as your self, or else had he not been there present very ill should we have defended his honour. Whereupon they newly embraced Don Bellionis, saying he had not done well in not disclosing himself to them, that they might with more confidence have used their arms in that battell.

Speak no more of this (said Don Bellianis) for it is evident if any honour I have, or any thing performed therein, it only proceeds from you. Wherefore it is I that am onely bound to you all. Parry if that were so (replied Don Brianell) I had there lost my life, being unable to defend it. The Prince Arileo, and the Princesses disturbed this conference, coming to greet Don Bellianis, where they renewed their thanks.

Which done (their men having ransackt their enemies camp the two Kings, the Princesses, Don Bellianis, with the Prince Arileo, the Phancian Prince, and the venturesome knight, directed their way towards Bollera, by the same discourting of many things. Don Bellianis being of opinion they should return and sack Persepolis, which they might easily have done, being left without any Garrison.

But the Princess Persiana, with the other Princes, put him from it, alleadging their men to be weake and weary of their last travell. And so at last arrived in the city, where well ordering their troops, and other businesse, went to the Dukes Pallace to repose themselves, where their wounds were dressed.

The Prince Don Conrumeliano, lodged with Don Bellianis at his intreaty who greatly joyed with his company, being a knight of pleasant discourse. Where wee leave them, till we have set downe what the Soldans men did, after they were overthrown and put to flight.

The Soldans men, after they were overthrown and put to flight, did nothing in all that time to molest the Christians. The King of Persia, who was the cause of this war, did nothing in all that time to molest the Christians.

The King of Persia, who was the cause of this war, did nothing in all that time to molest the Christians. The King of Persia, who was the cause of this war, did nothing in all that time to molest the Christians.

CHAP. XXXI.

What the Soldans men did after the battell And how they carried the news of their discomfiture to the Soldan.

The battell being ended in manner aforesaid, part of the Soldans men that suruived, took their way to Persepolis, and hid themselves in the wood, and some that were more hardy closely mingled themselves with their adversaries, having left behind them those things that might discover them, who heard Don Contumelianos discourse, how the knight of the Golden Image was he that had slain the fearefull King of Cyprus.

These knights having closely hid themselves, expected the dark nights approach, and the closest that they might, departed thence having not entered into the City, and by the pale rellent of the shining moon, looking about the field for the bodies of Caroliano and Boraldo, to carry them to Persepolis, did at last find them. Caroliano being in perfect sense, but Boraldo yet lay in his trance being pitifully wounded and extream faint with the losse of much more blood then his brother: and setting them on horseback with two knights behind, to guide them came the next day to Persepolis, where incomparable was the lamentable grief, generally of all, all participating of the present losse, and certainly according to their grievous clamours and languishing cries, their adversaries (had they come upon them) might easily have taken and sacked the city, for being overwhelmed in bloody tears breaking from their hearts that they knew not one another.

But above all the rest, the distressed Soldan of Persia, with mad rage rent his clothes, tearing the ancient haire of his brave beard, and blaspheming and desying his Gods, with hideous shrieks cried out, Oh unhappie Soldan of Persia, Is it possible the Gods should honour thee with so large an Empire, to disgrace thy glory with this shame, and that art not able to revenge thee on thy rebellious subject, that hath slain thy son in law, and in despite of thee, stolne thy only daughter.

But these happie are you Caroliano and Boraldo, that have in defence of your deare Prince and Country, vanquished with all conquering death, leaving your lives for an immortall trophy of your
truz

true loyaltie. And unhappie am I, that is not able to die, when and where my fame and gloz is doo ioued in the lasting Center of blacke obliuion. But let fortune doe her worst, as she already hath in times past. For I bow by the immortall Gods, neuer to cease till I haue put to utter desolation he and his accomplices, that hath been cause of all these evils. Thus as he was most bitterly raging and exclaiming against his cruell fate, there entered the hall gate the horses, that (as it is said) brought his Cousins, who (though pittously wounded as may be belied) spake unto the Soldan, that somewhat comforted him selfe, to see them not altogether dead, and commanding them to be laid on a bed, in his owne Chamber, where they were cured.

And the other knight beginning to discerie their overthrow, said: that having almost utterly defeated their enemies, there arrived the Prince Contumeliano of Phenicia, with foure thousand men, with whom after a bloodie conflict, we rested thus vanquished, and defeated. Oh mee, disgraced that I am (said the Soldan) and was that dishonourable knight there, that slew the mighty King of Cyprus. I doe not now thinke much of your death, seeing he and the knight of the Golden Image were against you yet, assure you I reioyce to knowe they are both there, that our reuenge may be greater. Wee haue bene greatly deceived herein, dead soveraigne (said the knights) for the knight that deuided the King of Cyprus of his life, is not the Prince of Phenicia, but is the invincible knight of the golden Image that only for the same effect came forth of prison, disguised in habitt onely of one of his Damzels and repared all Contumelianos report. Is it possible (Oh immortall Gods) that such a thing should be, which I yet dare not beleue, and surely there was not in the world a man blinder to know him then I. For seeing him so wounded, and bleeding through his Armour, could haue imagined, it could haue bene none but he. But tell me, what is Don Contumeliano? Which should be no bad knight, seeing the knight of the Golden Image took his name and Armes; One of the valliantest knights in the whole Camp, is that Prince (said they) for at two blows did he bring your Cousin Boraldo to this passe you see, with many other worthy deeds that in the battell he performed.

But tell me, what is Don Contumeliano; which should be no bad knight, seeing the Knight of the Golden Image took his name, and Arms; One of the valiantest knights in the whole Camp, is that Prince (said they) for at two blows did he bring your Cousin Orlando to this passe you see, with many other worthy deeds that in the battell he performed.

These newes much discomforted the Soldan in which state he continued eight dayes, till he was altogether well of his fall, in which time he heard by the report of many knights of the adventure that was not far from the Citie. Who greatly desiring to see, went thither, accompanied with many knights. Where being come, and reading the letters of the Pillar, divers would probe it, but in a little space, as many as did were overcome, and yet could see no bodie.

I have many yeares agoe, heard of this advantage (said the Soldan) and how it was here, and I know that in the Soldan my Grand-fathers time, many ancient knights probed it. And so from that time it was published abroad, that many wandring knights from diverse places, came to probe themselves in it.

The Soldan after this, returned to the Citie, and caused his command to be proclaimed throughout his large Empire, that every one able to beare armes, should within two moneths be at Persepolis. Whereby hee began to order the mightiest and strongest Army his land, that untill that time was ever seen in those parts. For within one moneth, there was arrived in that Citie above three hundred thousand valiant horsemen, and well appointed. The Soldan sent to many places, as well abroad as at home, to take for his son the Prince Perlance, to lead those troopes against his adversaries: with whose coming, he so assured himself to be revenged as if it were already executed. For he not onely thought to destroy the Duke Alhiron, and the Prince of Phenicia, but also thought to subvert the kingdome, and King of Asia, whom he imagined, to be father unto Arsilio, and if those warres happily succeeded to passe against the Grecian Emperour, whom he knew to be free of the danger that Don Galaneo of Antioch, had put him in. So that these imaginations made him longer stay then he had purposed, preparing all necessaries for the wars.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Don Briavell, required by the Prince Don Bellianis, departed towards the Kingdome of Antioch, How the Duke Asfion married the Princess Persiana and what strange things happened in the Ioufts vnto the Princes Contumeliano, Arifco, and Florispolano.

The Knights (as is said) being within the Citie of Boller, made famous by their being there, were within fiftene daies throughtly whole of their wounds, though not of that which the amorous Prince Don Bellianis had in his heart, for love of the beautiful Princesse Florisbella, which had so penetrated his tender bzeast that he determined (vpon the good successe of those affaires) neuer to cease, till his eyes might enjoy her happie sight thinking therewith, to mitigate the cruell passions of his tormented heart.

Thus continuing thereupon a day taking apart the Princesse Persiana told her, that he thought it not amisse, if he desired the accomplishing of her desires, she should forthwith wed the Duke Asfion, least the changes of fortune might hereafter disturbe it, and that the Dolour her Father would not be so cruell, that hearing it would not rejoyce to see her married to her content. She that nothing else desired, said, she would in every thing accord to his will, derogating in no respect from it. Wherefore, thanking her for that honour, he conferred of it with the Duke, who thereto agreed, appointing the nuptials to be solemnized tenne daies after, which was the time they celebrated a feast dedicated to their Mahomer.

All the Knights greatly rejoyced at that Don Bellianis had done, preparing them selves very sumptuously against the marriage day, ordering a most stately Tournay in honour of the nuptials. And in the meane time, hearing of the Dolours preparations and sumptuous multitude, neglected not to demand the age of all her friends and allies.

And Kings sent to their Kingdomes, that all their help might there forth speed be sent. And to these great enemies being thus nigh one to the other, were by their spalls still advertized of eithers doings.

The knight of the golden Image much grieved to see these dayes, because they hindered and kept him there from his prosecuted journey: despairing of hoped joys, wanting the presence of the cause of his griefe, which he some what lightened, by daily conversing with the Damzels of his mistresse, else otherwise he hardly could have staid there all the while, which he beguiled with pleasant discourses, with these Princes and Ladies, and one day talking with the Princesse Aurora, about her affaires in Antioch, she said to him, it would not be necessarie she should write unto the Governour of that kingdome, placed by the Prince Don Gallaneo on whom she reposed great trust.

I think it not amisse (answered Don Bellianis) if you suppose it will not disadvantage you. But who shall carrie it, when it is made? I shal want no knight to do it (replied she) or if I do, one of my Damzels shall undertake the troublesome toil.

Whereupon Don Bellianis with pen Inke and paper, wrote the letter and, when it was done, called the Prince Don Brianell (whom as is said greatly desired to be imployed in the Princesse service, said to him he should be the bearer of that letter, being a matter to be trusted on none but he. There is no reason (my good Lord) said the Princesse, that you should undergo such trouble, having already hitherto taken so much for my sake, you need not now further endanger your self in these new, and such seldom seen toils having at my hands receiv'd no favour for any. It is no trouble (our lady said he) which undertaken in your behalf especially in the advancing of your glory: and therefore I am encouraged straight to depart hence I gladly would have accompanied you (replied she) if this present war did not hinder me, where Don Bellianis is also necessarily stay'd.

It is better that you remain here (said Don Bellianis) for the Prince Don Brianell will quickly return with answer: and thus they agreed, that the next day he should depart, telling those knights that he went about an earnest matter of his own, which forced him so to leave them, assuring them his return should be with speed. And so taking his parting leave, the ensuing morning he set forth on his voyage, continuing his daily journeyes, till he arriv'd at Antioch, where

where there befell him great adventures, as shall be set down in his due place.

So leaving him, and returning to our former purpose, the day was at length come, wherein the royall nuptials of the Princesse Persiana, with the Duke Alfron should be celebrated: against which time, every one provided themselves according to their estate in such tumultuous Times, where in they daily expected the arrivall of their enemies: for which cause, lest they should be suddenly surprized, they kept in armour above 8000. men, which they had within the City besides their camp they had without the wals, intrenched about the furthest place of the city, because one should not trouble the other in their sally. Which multitudes were divided in equall Squadrons and battalions, as they were ready to fight some pisch battell. The day come the Princesse Persiana issued forth the contented Lady living, she was led by the arm by Don Bellianis, going all on foot, because they would be the better seen, with a soft pace. When they were seen by their armed troops, they all shouted aloud, saying, It is a just thing that we all spend our dearest lives for the safetie of such Lords or impall their heads with the imperiall Diadem, which they so well deserve, and there with discharged so many peeces of Ordnance, and sounded so many Instruments of all sorts, as it seemed the totall subversion of the universall world: in which manner they arrived in the Temple, where they were married, which done, they returned with like triumph to the Ballace, where the tables being covered, they dined, the Bride and Bride-groom at one table with the two Kings, and the three Princes, and at another dined many of their Nobilitie. The dinner done they danced according to their manner, while the knights, maintainers of the joules entered the lists. They which that day were challengers, were the Princes Asileo. Cotumelino, and a Cousin, of his thither came a little before, a very valiant and couragious knight called Don Florisiano of Sucua, who being greatly loved of the

Princes,

Princes, easily obtained the breaking of the first lances, and so ordering himselfe for it, began the joustes, (the Duke with the Princes, and all his companie, being mounted on their Theater) which he performed so gallantly, that ere he lost any stirrup, he unhorsed thirtie knights, all which according to the order of those jousts hung up their helmets, with their armes, one higher then the other, as the knight of the golden Image judged his deserts, so that many, onely to be counted valianter then his fellow (though they could not vanquish the maintainer) presented themselves against him, that it had to be before one another, they almost tumbled one upon another, calling him no knight that did not joust.

At this time there came one to the Duke from the Citie gate, and said to him aloud, how there were arrived foure knights, that craved licence to enter, and try their fortune in that joust: for having heard of those feasts, they came to joy their triumphs. There is no reason we should feare any (said Don Bellianis,) and therefore let them come, for were they spies they could do little harme. The knights having this leave entered whose gallant semblance drew upon themselves all the gazers eyes, three of them were armed in a rose colour armour, garnished with many Eagles. The devices on their shields were all of one fashion, the one half white with black Eagles, and the other half black with white Eagles. The other knight being of a bigger constitution, was all plated in black armour, and on his shield was portrayed the whole of fortune, with a knight placed on the top thereof, from whence he seemed headlong to tumble down, dragged by the hand of death with this motto,

Well deserveth such a fall,
Becoming deaths cruell thrall:
That doth attempt so rashly.

He seemed to be as brave a knight as ever was any seen. (except him of the Golden Image) the knight being within the Tilt-yard approached where the Duke Alfron was, and changing his voice, which the present state of those matters urged him to) yet that he might be of all heard, said: Which is the valiantest and chiefest knight in this assembly, whose command the rest obeys? And yet by the immortal Gods, I think every one might rather judge, each of you siter to command then to be commanded of any.

To which words the mighty king of Armenia replied.

Why doe you require it (sir knight) whose gallant presence and liberall speech, deserbeth no less part in the domination you speak of, then in any thing else.

And you may declare your mind to any of us here, having neither more nor lesse superiority the one then the other, being all equall in the bond of true amity. If it be so (said the knight, I then demand of you all, to assure me you will let us returne as we came unknown (the Jousts finished) and that you require of us nothing against our wills.

The Duke Alfron thus answered. You may joust when you will (sir knight) for the assurance you demand, wee grant it you, although you needed not to request it, (being admitted within our gates,

It is so (replied the knight) but tell me now which is here the Duke Alfron, I am here (answered the Duke) but wherefore aske you for him? I do enquire for him (replied the knight) because I thought so brave a knight as he, and this day married, would have maintained the field within the lists, against all adventurers, and not sit and behold the falling of other knights.

These words come, what moved the Duke, that he was about sharply to answer him has not the knight of the Golden Image staied him, who taking the knight by the hand, says

courteously said, You may (sir knight) joust when you please for I assure you, you shall not want whereon to imploy the valour of your mind else were it a shame, that the Duke should enter the lists on such a day, having so many good knights at his command.

Then shall we see the bounty of these your knights (replied he in the black armour) whereupon I take my leave, and so went to behold the jousts.

All the Dukes knights made way, that the four strangers might joust, which they seeing one of the knights of the Eagles put himselfe against Florispiano, who resting his lance, gave one another so fierce encounters, that Florispiano lost his stirrups and had fallen, but that he held by his horses neck, and his adversary measured his length on the ground, and straight his shield was taken from him, and denuding his name, he replied, he had no other then the knight of the Eagles.

Don Bellianis commanded it to be set higher then all the rest, which so enraged the Black knight, that he would by no means suffer the other two to joust: but himselfe choking with rage, ranne against Florispiano, who with the great encounter tumbled to the ground badly shivering their lances in pieces.

The black knight past furiously forward, and recovering one stirrop he had lost, and Florispiano was conveyed out of the field and unarmed to take the air, for the closeness of his armour had almost choaked him but quickly recovering himself returned to the scaffolds, very glad as if he that day had done nothing.

The Prince of Phœnicia setting himselfe against the black knight, met both in the middle of their course with such terrible encounters, that the knight of fortune (for so was he called in the black armour, doubled backward upon his horse, but Contumeliano had fallen, if he had not valiantly staid himself by

by his horse neck, which went three or four steps back: insomuch that every one thought he would have fallen; but getting him the spurs made him furious, passe forward. Greatly a fount was all the beholders, and specially the Knight of the Golden Image, that demanded of his company if any of them knew that Knight, but none could tell what he was.

The beauteous Periana calling the knight of the Golden Image, said to him softly that none might heare: you shall know (Sir Knight) that it is the Prince Perianco of Persia my Brother.

Is it possible (said the Knight of the golden Image?) It is (replied she) for I know him not only by his encounters but especially by the speeches he used to us. therefore look what you have to doe, for certainly he came with intent to kill our Duke Alhiron.

He shall not effect his intent so (replied the Knight of the golden Image) for so many of us are not here for nothing. And so turning to behold the fount, commanded his armour secretly to be brought him.

But in the meane time Don Consumeliano, and the Knight of fortune wounded one another with piteous blows, that at last the Prince of Phancia fell to the earth from his horse.

The Knight of fortune passed forward though with mighty trouble, for in all his life time he had never received so strong and fierce encounters from any. At this time the Prince Arileo ready to burst with anger, took the biggest lance he could find, and spurred against the Knight of fortune that also came against him with incredible fury, that both brake their lances in the middle of their shield, so bravely that only the handles remained in their hands making the rest fly in a thousand shivers, higher then the region of the air: the like they did by the second: but at the third, burning in the choller that the one could not overthrow the other

they met with such vehement rigor, slaying themselves in their stirrups, and in such anger encountered that the prince Arfileo came to the ground over his horse's crupper, receiving a monstrous fall: and the Knight of Fortune lost both his stirrups, and with much ado got hold by his horse's mane, staying himself most courageously, rather desiring to die, then to fall in that place. The Prince Arfileo rose greatly ashamed of his chance, before that company. Straight were all the shields of the adventurers taken away, (and in their places were only set those of the three challengers: for so commanded the Knight of the Golden Image, who seeing him of Fortune remained sole maintainer, in great haste began to arme himself, commanding his horse to be brought him.

CHAP. XXXIII.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The end of the Jousts.



While things were thus uncertaine there entered the Tilt yate two brave knights both armed in one kind of white Armour, engraven with many Imperiall Crownes whose goodly presence highly delighted all the beholders, who coming within the Tilt-yate nere to the Presence, one of them spured his Courser with such gallantnesse, that arriving to the Scaffold, where the Ladies and Princes were, he made his Horse bend both his knees unto the ground, making him passe forward, like to a deadly bullet shot from a Cannons furious mouth.

The other went to the place where the Knight of the Golden smage was, and as if he knew him, and were sorrowfull of their meeting, said thus unto him. If you will give us leave (sir knight) we will try our fortune against your knight that seemeth to expect the joust, desiring to save you the labour of arming your self where we be. I repute it as a high favour worthy sir (replied Don Bellianis) besides every one hath liberty to joust especially your self, whose courage I doubt not but will attempt far higher matters. The knight humbling himselfe for that courtesie, said, I beseech you (sir knight) in courtesie to favour me with your shield, seeing mine cannot defend any encounter. It greatly pleaseth me (replied Don Bellianis) and in lieu whereof you shall leave me yours.

The knight gave him his, which was plect in above ten places, by the encounters of lances, though it was of a most fine temper: and taking Don Bellianis went to the knight of Fortune, and thus began, How shall our fight be (sir knight)

for I haue alwaies seene the victoꝝ knowne only by the strength of armes, whereby none may be called vanquished but by default of his owne valor, which is seldome found in fouling for often thereon do knights miscarie, thzough the weaknesse of their hozles, and not of their force. Welike you craue the combat at my hand, (said the knight of Fortune) and not the fouling; you haue understod me right (said the knight of the Crownes, for that is it I seke for. The knight of fortune (seeing the picture on his aduersaries shield, highly to resemble another which hee had ingraven in his heart, so greatly desired the combat with him, that he though long till he began it,) with aloud voice said. Then sir (knight) be our battell as you will, for I am ready for all things. And so taking a strong lance from his Page, with a sharpe and strong Riald Pike, came out of the lists into abroad field thereby, the like did the knight of the crowns. But while they were thus talking, the other knight of the Crownes demanded of the other knights of the Eagles, if they would breake their lances with him. They that nothing else desired, yielded thereto, and so departing the one from the other, beginning the gallantest ioust that in all that day was to be there seene.

For the knights of the Eagles were of that best w'thin a great way of them, yet both were oerthrowne from their hozles, for hardly in the world was knowne a better knight for valour then he of the Crownes, whose seemly bountie, was of all admired.

But at this time the two heroicke warriors, the knights of the Crownes and of Fortune, spurred their fierce Couriers against each other, that with their furious noyse, the earth seemed to tremble and shake under them, met like the furie of two tempestuous Currents, that breaking through the earth to runne into the seething Ocean, and their shields meeting these knights pierced them through together with
(in the next page) their

their Armour, and Coats of mail, both resting wounded on their breasts. The pieces of their Lances mounted higher then the Clouds, themselves meeting with their Horses, bootes, shields, and Helms, in such manner, that both Horses fell down dead under them, and their Masters seemed but in little better case then they, in such a trance they fell, that every one judged them dead. Oh Immortal Gods (cried out the valiant Knight of the Image) what terrible encounters be these. Dead without doubt are the best Knights this day living; and within himself greatly marvelled to see his Shield pierced, which till then could never be penetrated with any Iron. But this effect wrought the Armour of the brave Knight of Fortune against which no Enchantment prevailed, being forged by the Art of the wise Frishton, as hereafter shall be shewn.

And being about to descend to see if the Knights were dead, saw both rise together; who seeing the stat wherein they were, more furious then the Tygers of Herkania, came one against the other with drawn Swords in their Hands, with whose slicing edges, they wounded one another with their untamed Arms, that they forced their Heads to touch their knees by bending; and at last, to stay their bodies, set their Hands on the ground, and so raising themselves, began the cruellest combat, and most dangerous fight, whole like till then the beholders never saw. These Combatants were so enraged against one another, that they thought to resist their cutting Blades, which never befell them before. But the courageous Knight of Fortune, that greatly hastened the end of that fight, warding a blow of his brave adversary, with his Shield, ran within him, gave him so great a blow, that he cut his Armour, with a piece of his flesh, from which wound there issued abundance of blood, and quickly stepping back, thrust at him with his Sword, that it pierced all his defensive arms, making him feel the point, almost a finger within the flesh.

The Knight of the Crowns seeing himself so wounded, and seeing his adversary so nigh him, would not strike him with his sword, but with one of his Hands got hold of his Shield, and so strongly pluckt him thereby, that he had not time to second any more blows upon him, and letting his Sword hang down,

droew his Dagger, and therewith gave him two such blows, that penetrating his Varnish, they deeply opened his flesh, that any other but he could no more have sought. The Knight of Fortune, seeing his Enemy so ale him, took his body overthwart in his arms, with such fury, that both had like to have fallen. The Knight of the Crowns did the like, and so strongly pressed each other, that through others places they lost much blood. In which manner they continued half an hour, never able to overthow one another: and so parting asunder, withowen a while to breathe, but with their sight they could scarce stand on their feet, yet walked the best they might, because their wounds might not close with cold blood, least they should not alter end their fight. Who may expresse the wonder of the gazing multitude to see so fierce a fight, whose like none eber heard of: and with that the night so suddenly came upon them, that they could by no means end their combat. The Princess Persiana, that very well knew her Brother, said to Don Bellianis.

Suffer not (Dear Sir) that such Knights here dye without cause: for if you do, the whole world will blame you for it; besides that, our Royal Vertues will thereby be scandalized with Reproach, to my eberlasting grief, if it should happen. Don Bellianis buckled on his Helm, and mounted upon his Horse, accompanied with all those Kings, Princes, and Lords, who shewed him great Honor, as in the Emperors his Fathers Court he could not have greater; and together they went to the field in the place where those Knights were fighting, who for all their approach, would prosecute their combat, calling for Knights to end the same: But the Knight of the golden Image stopping between them, thus began, and said.

These Justs, Renowned Knights, were began only for pleasure, that our Knights might show their valour, and not that any controversy should be decided in it by the uncertain end of so cruel a battel, especially between two so brave Knights.

Wherefore seeing the Heroick Vertues of your untamed Hearts needs no further experience, having amply shewed the rare strengths of your strong bodies, leaving no time for others to do the like since your coming: In the behalf of this Royal company

company and knightly presence, and for my own sake I do intreat you to leave this combat in the state it is, procuring on neither side the end thereof: since neither side may tolerate it, giving no more Honor, nor advantage no more Passes to the one, then to the other. The knights being as courteous as valiant, adorned with no less beauty and bounty, then courage and fortitude; intreating each other to answer, thinking that he which first replied, should be less accounted in leaving off the battel; which neither of them would do, and stood, answering never a word: which the knights of the Crowns seeing, requested Don Bellianis to suffer them to finish their work.

I may not do so (replied he) and therefore do intreat you to leave it: for I should be reputed of little worth, if my intreaties might not prevail with you. The knight of the Crowns requested him to stand awhile aside, till he had spoken with his Adversary, which Don Bellianis doing, the other thus said to the knight of Fortune. You see (Sir Knight) what great discourteous ours were, to discontent such knights, therefore let us leave our battel at this time as it is, and we will end it thirty dayes hence where you will; I am content so to do, (answered the knight of Fortune) and let our meeting be in the Valley of the three Fountains, which is three miles from this City, where you shall find me only with my Page.

This agreed between both, the knight of Fortune turned to Don Bellianis, saying; Remember (Sir Knight) how against our wills, you disturbed our combat for this present time, which makes me rest discontented of you. You have no reason to say so, (replied Don Bellianis) for I have perceived what hath been done is to your advantage, and if you so think, stay with us, where you shall have your wounds cured to your content, and after I will answer you as you will. I may not stay (answered the knight of Fortune) but hereafter we may meet when all this may be seen; and so waiting no other answer, mounted upon a Horse, which Don Bellianis presented him, and taking his leave, went out of the way he came.

And here the Historiographer saith, this knight of Fortune was the valiant Prince Perianco, who having understood the estate of those affaires, came with intent to do by the Duke, (if he entered

the *Assis*) what he had done by Don Gallaneo, but seeing his purpose too short otherwise, went out of the City, causing his Knights to bind his wounds; which done, he never rested (accompanied with them which were his nigh Allies) the one called Don Fermosel of Solistia, the Prince of that Island; and the others were Brethren, named Don Crisalaneo, and Don Gramajis of Thrace, till he came to Persepolis: Where (to be brief) we leave out the great joy the Soldan conceived, with their arrival.

That straight many prepared themselves to march forward thinking every hour a year, till they might confront their Enemies. And the general joy of all was so great for the arrival of their Prince, that it very hardly can be set down.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How the Knights with the Imperial Crowns were known to be the Emperor Don Bellaneo, and Sabian of Trebento: and how the Emperor went to the Valley of the three fountains, to combat with the Prince Perianco of Persia.



ON Bellians rested something malecontent, after the departing of the Prince Perianco, thinking he had made little account of him, and was divers times about to follow him, but that he remembered he was sorely wounded, and so let him go, hoping to meet with him ere those Wars ended, greatly commending his High Valour, remaining greatly satisfied with the manner of his fight; having never seen any Knight that therein more contented him, except the same that with him combated; whose admirable Courage, and Supreme Excellency he not a little admired, and going to him that was going away with his companions, said, You shall not so much discontent me O magnanimous Knight, as he did that with you fought; and therefore I earnestly intreat you to tell me your name, and to remain with us until your most dangerous wounds be very well cured.

The knowing of my name is needless (Sir Knight) for I shall not any way be known, having never wandered these parts.
But

But if this will please you, I will unlace my Helm; upon condition you take no more at my Hands against my will, on any while they were thus talking, the Prince Arileo, Don Contumeliano, Fiorispiano of Suevia, and the Princess Persiana & Aurora, with the Duke Alfidor came thither, and thinking he would go, intreated them to stay, the curing of their wounds: they humbling themselves for that high Favour, accepted their proffer, and he with whom the Persian Prince had combated, took off the Helm, whith he no sooner did, but Don Bellianis and Arileo knew him to be the Emperor Bellaneo, their Lord, whose sight so amazed them, that they thought they saw him in a Shadow, and not in substance, and their present joy was so great, that it almost made them discover themselves. And the Emperor seeing them so amazed with joy, could no longer stay himself, but embracing his Son, said in the Greek Language: What is the thing (Sole Knight) that hath so amazed you? Don Bellianis after his duty done, demanded of him in the same tongue, what the other Knight was. It is (replied the Emperor) Sabian of Trebento, son unto the Duke of that County, who came with me out of Constantinople to seek you.

All the rest of those Princes wondered at their acquaintance, informed that the gallant Princess Persiana, going in sight of them, said with admirable grace. I am very glad (renowned Knights) and we all rest much beholding unto you, that at our intreatings you would suffice our longing desires, in manifesting your old acquaintance, and not conceal your selves in these tumultuous broyles: and am right joyful that the Knight of the Golden Image, hath been conversant in such good company, especially so much resembling you in favour, and no less for valiant deeds of Dauntly Chivalry. The like said many others before her: so indeed the Prince Don Bellianis so much favoured his Father, that were they both of one age, hardly might they be distinguished the one from the other. Yet the Emperor Bellaneo was somewhat lower of stature, and bigger set than he, having his face honored with a large Beard, something gray, representing a high majestical gravity with so pleasing a countenance, as he excelled all Knights of his age. The Princess Aurora (as afore is expressed, having seen him in the discovered Castle,

when he combated against Don Gallaneo of Antioch nigh Constantinople, knew him straight, and he her; but seeing how dangerous it might be to discover him, made as though he knew him not, yet thrusting among the company that talked about him, and seeing him alone, said that none could hear. I do not doubt but I shall obtain your Graces pardon, (most excellent Lords) if I do not shew you that high Honor, and Royal entertainment, that your Emperious State and Person meriteth, being forced thereto by this times present necessity. The Emperor more narrowly regarding her, recalled her former sight to his remembrance, knowing her to be she that had led away her Son, and lovingly embracing her, said. Greater is my entertainment by your kind words (Dupleam Lady) then any other effect that might be done by me, being spoken of so absolute a Lady.

Then was Sabian of Trebento very lovingly received of them all, as if he were their general brother. And so with the noise of infinite musical, and military instruments, and an innumerable multitude of lights, they were conducted to the Palace, where the Emperor being laid on a most rich bed, and having his wounds dressed, was left alone to repose his weary body.

And Don Bellianis taking Sabian of Trebento by the hand, brought him to the Hall, where they were expected by these Princes to supper, with such abundance service, as every one may imagine: where Don Bellianis was remained by all these Lords, what the Knights were; who said they were his nigh kinsmen, and that the wounded Knight was his Uncle, whose admired valour they all commended.

Now we not know (said the King of Armenia, what the Knight of Fortune was, that with him his combat, behaving himself so gallantly therein. And followed him thither (said Sabian of Trebento) for, on a Bridge ten miles hence, talking with me, at the first encounter my horse dyed, and after would by no means draw his sword, and to my companion coming to me, I took my Pages horse, and both of us followed him, till we heard he was come to the City. But by the way we understood of a Knight, he is now unto the Sophy of Siconia, called the Knight of the three Images. As it possible (said the Duke of Alfron) and certain.

certainly, I think no less, remembering his words, and had I known it, the matter had otherwisse past. And I assure you, I nothing wonder at what he did, for he is the best Knight that ever was in these Countreies, therefore it behoves us hourly to expect the Soldanes arrival, for he expected nothing but his coming.

In an ill hour may he resolve to come (said Florispiano) for little is the harm he now can do us. In such talk they a while were in, till it was bed-time, when giving each other the good night, were all lighted to their Chambers. The Duke Alsirom and Princess Persiana, lay together in a sumptuous bed, where they set an end to their long tormented Love, consummating all that night to their great pleasures, though not well content, remembering within what short time they were to be besieged with so puissant an Host as the Soldan had assembled in Persepolis.

The valiant Knight of the golden Image, after they were all gone to bed, went to visit the Watch and Centinels at the City, as his use was to do every night, and took with him the Prince Arfileo, and Sabian of Trebento, that by the imperial edict, hove from Constantinople, a great Fleet of Ships, with many more, the Knights besides the Emperoz, with whom also came out his brothers, Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessalie, being first knighted by their Father, all which companies had taken their way after him, to the Kingdom of Anicioch.

But the Emperoz and my self landing by the way, in an instant, at our return to the Shore found no Ship, being carryed away by a sudden Storm that arose, and so we stayed there, ending some adventures till we departed hence, and arriving in this Country, came to this City in request of the Knight of Fortune.

Know you not (said Don Bellianis) what became of the Ships, or were they all sunk in the tempest? We could learn nothing of them (said he) but our better hope is, they are not all lost. What number of Soldiers brought they (demanded Don Bellianis?) they brought (replied Sabiano) about 200000 fighting men, both well appointed, and the choicest of all the Empire.

fire. In this conference they spent the better two parts of the night, that at length they returned to the Wallace, and went to visit the Emperour, with whom they stayed till it was morning, never satisfying himself with asking what had befallen them in that Kingdom. The Prince Don Bellianis discoursed unto him every thing at large, telling him that he greatly wondered that he had undertaken so great toyl, as to come to seek him.

To discharge the debt I was in (replied the Emperour) for the succour I receiued at the unknown Castle, both of you, and of your Cousin, for our manner (as you know) is to make satisfaction in the same coin. And yet your duty was not to go away, not making your selves known. But letting it pass, what was the reason you did so? We could do no otherwise (replied Arfileo) having promised so to do.

They had thus chatted till the next morning, if the Emperour had not sent them to bed: Which they did, lying in that Chamber, and slept till the sun had the following morning arised up the cold Dew on the moist Earth. And rising out of their beds made them ready, and went altogether into the field, where the Juffs were kept, whose Prize the good Knight Sabian of Trebento obtained, with immortal Honor, by his brave deeds.

In this manner rested they a moneth unmolested of any, by reason of the boysterous cold winter, which kept the Soldan from encamping the host. In which time the Prince Don Bellianis though he greatly delighted in the Emperour his Fathers presence, whom all the rest called the Knight of the Crowns, sustained such grievous passions and torments of love for the absence of his dear Lady, that he often shewed to the death: nothing with him prebailing the consolating words of his Damzels, nor the Princess Aurora, to whom he made known his grief.

But every day grew worse and worse, which the Emperour his Father seeing (armed himself upon a day though he could hardly do so) being not altogether well, walked with him out of the City, and enquired of him very earnestly the cause of his melancholly Griefs, charging him not to conceal it by any means.

The

The Prince Don Bellianis told him, he knew not whence proceeded his grief, but that he felt extream anguish of mind, but could not tell the cause thereof. The Emperoz perceiving some love passion tormented him, having many times seen him sigh without any cause, overpast that talk, and said. Tell me whereabouts is the Valley of the three Fountains, for I must needs go thither. It is some three miles hence (said Don Bellianis) whether we may make an easie walk. Whereupon the Emperoz took a Lance from his Sons Dwarf, and sending him with his own Page back to the City, they went toward the Valley.

The Prince demanded of his Father why he went thither, For shall know, said he, I have engaged myself to the combat there, with the Persian Prince this day, and I am determined to meet him there alone without any company, for so we agreed, and therefore here we must part, for we must not go together. Don Bellianis grieved that the Emperoz had undertaken so dangerous a fight, and the more because he might not go to aid him if any sinister chance should befall.

But seeming to fear nothing, said; I will obey your command (dear Lord) seeing you will have it so, and will return unto the City, and excuse you till you come back. And so he kissed him the vally, and departed something better satisfied to see what little account the Emperoz made of the Battle: yet he resolved to frustrate it, as hereafter shall be shewn.

But here we leave them till we have set down the matter contained in the ensuing Chapter, which greatly aballeth this History.

CHAP. XXV.

Who the Sage Frisone was, and what he did that the battle between those Princes might not be effected.



In the Kingdom of Persia, where then all those knights were, dwelt a wise man, which was he that writ this great History, called Frisone, whose equal in the Magick Art, the World contained not, excelling therein all those of his time; for they procured to learn of him, This Rare Ma-

A a

gician

gician was so great a friend to the Persian Prince Perianeo, that all his labour and study was to no other effect, but for the good Success of his Affairs, consuming the greatest part of his time to that end. For which purpose, he had given him a most Excellent, Rich, and well tempered Sword, that the like was not within the Earthly Continent, except that of Don Bellianis, which before times appertained to that Valorous Knight Jason, the which that excellent Enchantress Medea had given him, when they enjoyed their loves, which she forged under the Constellation and Predominance of such Planets, that no Enchantment might against it prevail.

This Sword procured the Sage Friskone for the use of the Prince Perianeo, but he never could obtain it, because Medea by her Prophecies had bequeathed it to the successive Heirs of the House of Greece, placing it where Don Bellianis won it, by means of the Sage Bellona. But this wise Friskon being in the desert of death, where he made his Habitation, he there calling to mind the Persian Prince, came to know, that for all his Valour was so excellent, and very few that might equal him in strength, he notwithstanding might incur wondrous danger. And casting about with his Art to know the end of the battle, the Almighty God would not suffer him to find out the future thereof, reserving to his Divine Majesty, the knowledge of the event of all things, which to none others might be permitted, and the more he sought to know it, the further he was from it. Which thing so confounded him in his imagination, that he could not think what it might be. Wherefore he resolved by all means to disturb the fight, judging that afterward the Persian Prince might better revenge himself upon the Duke Alaron, for the injury he had done his Father, and therefore Desired, what you shall know in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXVI.

What Don Bellianis did, being gone from the Emperor, and how he combated with the Persian Prince, and were parted by the means of the Sage Frifton: and how the Soldans Host besieged the City of Bolleru.

DON Bellianis being departed from the Emperours his Father, so spurred his Horse, that quickly he returned to the City, wherein he entered very quiet, shewing no manner of alteration, but telling every one, that by the way inquired of him, for the Knight of the Crowns, that he stayed not far thence, for Sabian of Trebento his companion. He entered the Pallace, and meeting with Sabian, he requested him to lend him his Armour to supply his present need. May not I accompany you (said he?) He (replied Don Bellianis) bestowes, I will presently return. Where left you my Lord the Emperour (demanded he?) Hard by (replied the Prince) saying for me. Which said, he buckled on Sabians Armour, which nothing differed from his Fathers: and mounting a Horse back, he took his way to the Valley of the three Fountains to meet with the Persian Prince, and coming to a large Plain, he espied the Emperour lying under a Tree. Not taking another way, stayed at a place through which the Knight must of necessity pass, if he came: whose coming he attended, walking on his Horse, and revolved with himself what he had to do, and remembering that Knight loved his Army, he thought therein he stood disgraced, which so moved his desire to Encounter him, that he judged himself so unfortunate, that the said Prince would rather break his promise then come. Wherein he was greatly deceived; for he rather would endure a thousand deaths, than to falsifie his engaged word. For the day before he marched from Persepolis, with all his Troops, containing above three hundred thousand Horsemen besides Footmen, that covered all the mountains and Plains they passed by; and he so set forth with the manner of his march, that none could scape to advertize his Absences thereof: on whom he arrived with such a sudden fury, that it had not been much if

they had taken the City at their first assault, but that those valiant Knights were within, whose strength supplied the want of a competent Army to resist their Foes; and issuing forth in the Cities defence, began to fierce and bloody a Battle as ever was seen.

The Princes Ariselo, Contumeliano, and the Kings of Armenia, with the Duke Alhiron, went out of the City into their Camps, through a secret Way, accompanied with all the rest of the chiefest Knights, which they found in some danger by the adverse multitudes; with whose coming on all sides they began such cruel massacring of their men, that within a while, the Earth was dild with humane blood, and covered with dead bodies, slain by their furious Arms; which the Prince Perianeo seeing, thought he could have no better occasion to depart secretly to the Valley of the three Fountains, where he knew the Knight of the Crown expected him to end their former quarrel, and that he might the better pass unknown, he had put on a Sanguine Armour, without any devise on his shield; in which manner he went till he came to the place where Don Bellianis staid, whom he thought did then but come, seeing him walk about, and very glad, cryed out, he should there stay, for it was a place convenient for their Combat.

Don Bellianis turning about, and seeing him so altered in his Armour, knew him not, (but that he thus said) I am the Knight that hath established this combat with you this day: for which we are now in a good place, where none shall disturb us. You come so disguised (replied Don Bellianis) that I know you not. But I am right glad we are so well met, to end our commenced enterprize. But first tell me (said the Persian Prince) since one, or both of us shall here remain, what you are, and how you are called, and I promise to do the like. It doth not please me (replied the valiant Prince Don Bellianis) for I well know you are the Renowned Perianeo Prince of Persia. When is not so (answered the Persian Prince) satisfy me with knowing the cause why you bear Portrayed the Picture of that Divine Lady in your shield: It is the Shadow (replied Don Bellianis) of the Celestial Sublance, that Imperates my Heart and Soul, and therefore do I continually bear it with me.
un.

unhappy Knight, shall any in the world dare to say any such thing in thy presence ; and with a fiery choller that gnaw'd his heart, he turn'd his Horse to take his full career in the field : The like old Don Bellianis meeting in the middle of his course with such admirable force and lightness, that they seemed more to fly, then on the ground to run. Oh who would not have desired to see this sight betwixt the flower of the Worlds Chivalry, here opposed one against the other : For the Prince Perianeo had not his like on the Universe, except Don Bellianis and his Father ; and yet his Father had Princes, his Brothers, though they were Knighted, had not used their Arms. But to return to our former discourse.

The two Combattants encountered each other, with such impetuous and sudden strength, that their Lances being big and knotty, and their Forces without compare : All their defensive Armour was pierced, and their Lances past between their left sides and arms, and meeting body with body, Shields and Helms together made so huge a noise, as if two Towers had met. Don Bellianis lost his stirrups : but the Prince Perianeo if he had not quickly got hold by his Horses neck, he had surely gone to the ground, making many signs of falling ; yet governed with implacable Rage, he gravely recovered his stirrups, turning toward Don Bellianis, that also made against him, and regretting one another with such rigorous blows, that all the Valley did resound with the noise, so cruell were they ; and where their swords lighted, from thence it carried Armour and flesh, and laid to fast upon one another, that they had no time to ward any blow with their Shields. In this manner laboured they above four hours, being so wounded, that it would have made any Adamantine breast to pity them ; and not speaking any word, withdrew apart to breathe.

The Prince Perianeo thus with himself began : Is it possible that the envious Stars that governed the fatal hour of my birth, should make me thus unhappy, to hear a Knight in my presence say he loves thy Lady, and that thou art not able to satisfy that proud fault, with the dearest blood of his front Heart, but suffer him to bring thee to such a point, as to wish the pitiless stroke of an impartial cruel death ; and this Knight is in-

chanted

chanted, or I am deceived if his forces be not now far greater then the other time I tryed them; and neither toll nor laboz both diminish them. But ob importuous Governours of my afflicted soul! What is he shall tell thee, that this thy Knight dieth, confessing the immovable faith he owes thee, having left no hope ebermore to see the glorious splendor of thy divine beauty. But let the reboiling Heavens dispose the resolution of my destined fate as they please; yet one of us ere we dye, shall confess the other worthy of thy service. On the other side Don Bellianis walking, & considering with himself the valour of his Adversary, imagining he never felt crueller blows (but of his Father) and that his forces more and more increased, and recognizing the cause of his fight, thus of himself complained. Oh Don Bellianis, unworthy to be called Knight and Lover of so Divine a Princess, to suffer another Knight thus to let thee blow, and not to make his tributary life do homage to thy sword; where, by thou hast lost both the Honour and title of a Knight, unless thou recoverest it by making his death's passage through his life. With the end of which words, he became so enraged, that his Heart seemed to burn in the fiery coles of his breast, & so redoubled his most furious courage, that if there had been four such Knights as the Persian Prince before him, he would in short time reduce them all to the mercy of his mortal blade. With which betwixt both hands he went against his Love-crooking Adversary, which did the like also, and raising his Median sword aloft, to descend it with a more fury, there appeared before him a Lady altogether like to her, whose picture hath with cruel poke subjugated his commanding Heart, which said unto him. What do you here (renowned Prince of Greece) know you not your love that is toward me, cannot take any esse, if first you free me not from this danger.

And therewith he thought he saw four monstrous Giants, like a Whirlwind snatcht her away, and that one dragged her Amber-gilded Hair with such barbarous savageness, that his unconquered Heart resolved to liquid blood at the cruel, yet a pitiful sight: & moreover another following them, cryed out, let me alone with that ill-worth for the mask dye by my hand. Which that valiant Prince Don Bellianis seeing, not respecting

ing the fight, pursued that Illusion which he saw, which took the way down the Valley. Whereupon his fine Armour with the devices of the Imperial Crowns, lost their Hew, becoming like those that the Prince Perianco did wear at the Jests in Bollera.

The Persian Prince, that nothing of that had seen, thinking his Adversary had left the Battle for some other reason, began to follow him, but suddenly his Belms were taken out of hands, and looking about to see who should do so; saw before him the dearest friend he had, the Sage Friskon, who thus said unto him.

What is the matter (dear Prince of Persia) that you follow whom you know not, nor whether it be your advantage so to do? Take my counsel; return to Bollera, for I have said such a snare for him, that you shall be fully revenged on your Enemies, and therefore follow not that Knight. So this said, he vanished away.

The Persian Prince was greatly amazed hereat, and so great was his Hate against the valiant Knight of the Imperfall Crowns, that he was about to follow him: yet notwithstanding, resolving the contrary, returned to his Fathers Camp, where arriving, he found the Battle still to endure very fierce, into which he thrust himself to help his men. Where we leave him, till we have express what hapned to Don Bellianis, pursuing those Inchantments.

CHAP. XXXVII,

How Don Bellianis following the Sage Friskons Inchantments, combated with the Emperor his Father in the Valley of the three Fountains: and how Don Bellianis was led away by the wise Bellons, to end a certain Inchantment.

The Prince Don Bellianis, as is said, pursued those Gyants, whom he thought carried prisoner the Princess Florisbella, in which pursuit he had remained enchanted by the sage Friskon, had it not been for his sword, yet was he by him deceived, seeming other wise then he was, which was all the Magicians could do. And going along, he espied a Knight, armed as he thought in

in the Persian Princes Armour, with whom he not long before fought with. And so soon as they approached together, all these Enchantments banished away: whereat like one amazed, wakened out of some dream, stood still. But the Knight that came up the Valley was his Father, who had by Frissons debtee his Armour changed. For that of Don Bellianis seemed like the Knights of Fortune; and the Emperors nothing differed from the same. Who seeing him come in haste, and without a Lance, left his own, and drawing forth his sword, went to meet him with it raised aloft. Don Bellianis doing the like; there began betwixt them the cruellest fight that all that day was fought, making their Heads bow to the Saddle pommel with their terrible strokes, so fast redoubling blow upon blow, that they struck fire out of their Armour, and made them often lose the sight of one another.

Don Bellianis seeing the cutting sword descend with such fury, spurred his Horse forward, and closing with him ere he could discharge his blow, took him twixt his strong arms, and lifting him out of his Saddle, shaking the Stirrups from his own seat. He leapt with him on the ground, where he opened both Armour and flesh with one mighty blow. But overcome with rage, both at one time raised their slicing swords, which falling with such strength, the Emperor had the Buckler of his Helm cut which fell on the Earth, and his sword descending on his left arm, it made there a grievous wound: But Don Bellianis was so overladen with the Emperors blow, that he was forced to set both knees and Hands on the ground, and the Emperor seeing himself without the Helm, struck his adversary so suddenly again with such fury, that he sorely wounded him on the left Shoulder, and the sword ran three Handals into the earth. But Don Bellianis never losing any spark of his admirable courage at any sifter accident, raised himself upon his feet, and turned upon the Emperor ere he had time to draw his sword from the ground. At this instant was the Emperors life in wondrous danger, being without Shield and Helm, and not able to recover his sword so soon as he should. And Don Bellianis being on foot with his sword raised with both Hands, & ready to discharge it, did suddenly know him, & with the greatest wonder that ever before he was in, cried out.

Oh

Oh Almighty God in whom I believe, is it possible my hands should commit so hainous treachery? And therewith staid his hand.

The Emperoz hearing these words, said: know you me Sir Knight? or what is the reason you end not your fight, whereunto Don Bellianis replied. I do most humbly beseech you my dear Lord and Emperoz, even by that Lord that hath permitted we should not dye by so great debts, that you omit and pardon this my error wherein I am guilty of no fault committed against you. And having said so, unlaced his Helm, whereat the Emperoz straight knew him, which struck him into so great an anguish to see his dear son so cruelly wounded by his Hands, that he was faine to sit him down, not being able to stand on his legs looking like a man ready to breathe his last.

Don Bellianis thinking his wounds were the cause of it, sat himself down, lamenting that unhappy chance, losing their blood so fast, that it made two Channels, as if they proceeded from two rising Springs, and overtaken by the darkness night, were put into so great fear, that they despaired of remedy. Especially Don Bellianis doubting thereby his Fathers life, who became the sudden amazement more troubled him then the danger of his wounds, quickly recovered himself, and embracing the Prince his Son, said.

O dear Son! tell me I pray you, why came you armed in the Armour of the Knight of Fortune? Did he peradventure die by your Hands, or how is it? for I cannot express the alteration I suffer till I know it.

I wear the arms of Sabian of Trebento, and no others: for those of the Persian Prince your self wears. I have not changed mine since the Emperoz. But tell me, what hath befallen you since you saw me, for surely we have been monorously deceived.

Don Bellianis told it him. Whereupon the Emperoz spake. Surely we have been Enchanted, and yet cannot tell by what means; but this is the strangest case I ever heard of, that both should seem to wear one kind of Armour, and not perceive it. It may be, that Lady that cryed to you for Help was she that so deceiv'd us. But let's depart from hence, for we lose much blood.

When they were upon going, they esp'd coming toward them an ancient Patron conducted by four monstrous Gyants, before them was carried a Pillar of fire, which lighted them their way: they came in such hast, that ere they could rise, she was upon them, whom presently the Gyants took from her Palltrap; and kneeling before the Emperoz, she requir'd his Royal Hands to kiss them. The Emperoz took her up, and she unmasking her self was soon known of Don Bellianis to be the sage Bellona, his dear friend; whereat conceiving as much pleasure as before displeasure, & accounting his danger none, embracing her, said,

What hap brought you hither (my good friend) at such a time, which is not without some special cause. The great love I bear to you, and the Emperoz your Father (replied she) is the cause thereof.

But you incur great perill through your wounds; eat this that I will give you, for with the like Medicine you were before cured. They did so, and were therewith presently well, as if they had no hurt at all, and their Armoz returned unto their former colour and debises. The Emperoz embracing her, said.

For Gods sake (Lady) tell me this adventure, for it doth more amaze me then any thing in my life; I will (replied she) and hardily shall you know it of any but of me. You well remember the combat you had agreed with the Persian Prince: now know he had to his friend a great Magician, in that art the skillfullest in all the world; this man knowing the great danger his friend would pass, with the Prince your Son; did obtain all which you have seen, changing both your Armour, that you might slay one another, each of you thinking you fought with the valurous Prince Periano: And trust me, his desire had taken effect, had it not ben for Don Bellianis's words, which for that purpose the wise Medea, many years before kept in the Cave where Don Bellianis won it, being the man she wished might have it, alwayes desiring to benefit the House of Greece, as often heretofore she hath done. For so it was written, where your Son found the Wizard, if he doth remember the words. I do very well remember them (replied Don Bellianis) for thus they said,

This

This Prophecie is mentioned in the second Chapter, and here explained with effect.

That with this Sword, the living should be lost, and the dead in possession of the recovered, and they restored to their Royal blood with knowledge of their possessors. You see now how it hath come to pass: and moreover they said, this should be.

At the same time when the fierceness of the courageous Lions, which are you two, by the greatness of his skill, which is that of the wise man called Frisone, that in knowledge equals her, because he hath all her Books, should be put in greater fear, (but this knew not he, for he did not look whether the Swords were won or no, or if the valiant Prince your son did wear it.) When the thing which were lost (that are you two, that being living were lost, by the alteration of your Arms; and supposing you already dead, it would have hapned, if the fight had been ended with the blow of this sword that cut the Faces of your Helm) were put in possession of your recovered selves, being restored to your royal blood (which was at the point to have been lost.) And the true possessors known (which are both you) taking one another for the Persian Prince.

Now I hope you understand the Adventure you have past, which not without cause you accounted strange. Greatly wounded the Knights at the Ladies words, who again said, But for another cause hath my coming been, which is to have with me the Prince Don Bellianis your dear son, whom I must presently use in a dear employ, which no less concerns him than his life.

Take us both with you, said the Emperour. I would willingly do it (replied she) but that the Duke Alfron greatly needeth your help, & therefore it is no reason to leave him alone, your son shall quickly return again. And here do as I counsel you, for I well knew this would happen, which made me write unto you, that you would by no means depart from the City of Constantinople, but you would do it, and it had not been much if you had lost your life. I will not go against your Counsel (replied the Emperour) but tell me if my son shall quickly return & so shall,

(said she) and therefore go to the City as soon as you can; and so making Don Bellianis mount on Horseback, who had taken the Emperors blessing, who with many tears did give it him, departed as swift as the wind, leaving the Emperor so distressed with imaginatons, whether his Son might be carryed, that he knew not how to resolve himself.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Emperor returned to the City of *Bollera*, and what hapned to him in the *Soldans* Camp, before he entred into the City.

THe Emperor remembering the Sages words, took his Lance and mounted on Horseback, approaching the City of *Bollera* almost by break of day, which he found beset with such multitudes, that he wondered at their so sudden arrival; and not knowing on which side the Duke lay intrenched, because the City was besieged round; He rushed among those Tents, as if he had been one of the Centinels, and so went till he came unto a great Pavilion, which he thought to be the Generals of those Troops, and looking into it, he saw many men talking with another that lay in his bed, whom he judged according to his manner and conditions, to be the Sophy, and hard by him he espied armed without his Helm the Prince of Persia that had bin cured after the same means that he was; their conference was, that it would be good to give another assault to the City, if it were but to affright them within, it would not be amiss. And the Emperor being busie in hearkning to this, there came unto him a Knight that was Colonel of that Court of Guard, and said: What do you here, you are not fit your quarters: I was walking about (said the Emperor) and I staid to look upon this Tent. And therefore shall you go to prison (replied the other) seeing you have no more care. The Emperor said, let us go together you will. Whereupon the Colonel turned to four men, and charged them to convey that Knight to his Tent. Which they going to do, the Emperor sorely wounded; overtaking them one after another to the ground with his lance, and about to do the like to the Colonel, he thrust himself among the

the Tents, calling for help. But the Emperour that heretofore became furious, reached his Lance at the Soldan (that lay in bed) with such force, rasing himself on his Eltrops, which if it had gone straight, he had no more need to make war; yet it missed him so little, that the Lance pass hitwist his arm and his side, and ran through all the bedding, nailing it above a Wandrel in the ground. Which the Knights seeing that were talking with him, gathered about him, thinking he had ben slain, and some went out to see what he was that had ben so hardy to do such a deed: amongst whom was the Prince Perianco.

But the Emperour thinking it no wisdom to oppose himself against so many, closely thrust among those that were come thither; and so pass till he came to the farther side of the camp, at such time that the Sun began to appear, and fearing that some might meet him and know him, and so frustrate his intent; He rushed with great violence upon the Guard on that side, and mangle their force, he passed through the midst of them, leaving above twenty piteously wounded on the Earth. And at length arrived in his own Camp, where being straight known, was with great gladness received, and so entered the City where the Duke and all the rest joyfully welcomed him; & being asked for the valiant Knight of the golden Image, He replied, he departed from him at the Valley of the three Fountains, and would quickly return.

So leaving them, he went to rest himself, for he greatly needed it. The Prince Perianco being come forth of the Tent, fearing his Father had ben slain, enquiring for him that had done it, came to the place where the Emperour had made the slaughter, there he found some dead, some grievously wounded, some hardly could he long, and demanded who had so wounded them, they replied they knew not, save that a valiant Knight clad in Armour, bearing certain Crowns upon his shield, had done those wonders, and in despite of us all bath entered the City of Bollerá.

But this the Prince knew, the Knight that would have slain his Father, was he with whom he did combat, though he much doubted it, because his dear friend, the noble Frison, had told him, he would set him in a place, where he should leave both

Honor and life: yet discontented and amazed, he turned to the Tent where he found the Soldan up, whereat he greatly rejoiced, and with no little gladness, demanded how he felt himself, and whether the Lance had done him any harm: None (replied the Soldan) but what I conceived with fear of death, and I assuredly think that was the Knight of the Golden Image, for none else could have the Heart to do it. So great is the bounty of this Knight (replied the Prince) that none might do it but he. In these words you shall see it (answered the Soldan): for he that doth not see his deeds, will hardly believe them, my self having seen him perform so Dauntly acts of Chivalry, else none should persuade me that any Humane creature could achieve them: For he being wounded, slew the terrible Dragon of the Ryphean Desert, and the King of Cyprus, assuring you, that when he entered with him in the Hills, the blood issued thence the joints of his Armes from his old wounds: We also discovered the adventure of the despair of love, with many other things which of him you have heard. I long to try (replied the Prince) how far his valour doth extend. For I know not whether it be a Knight that doth disturb me from ending a certain combat, and if it be he, I do protest to procure all means till I meet with him.

Do you know him (said the Soldan?) yes (replied the Prince) for yesterday I did combat with him in the valley of the three Fountains. But how did you with him (said the Soldan?) My friend the Sage Frison did part us, answered Perianeo. In such like continuance they till the ensuing morrow, advertising the whole Camp to be in readiness against the next assault.

The Duke Alfron, and the Kings, seeing the Knight of the golden Image came not, they altogether very sorrowfully intreated the Emperour to take the general charge over them all: which he did, though unwillingly. And having heard his Enemies intent, taking with him the Prince Arileo, and Sabian of Trebento, he mustered all his men, dividing them into five squadrons. The first he committed to the leading of the Phœnician Prince, and with him his valiant Cousin Fiorispiano, with two thousand well appointed Knights. The second he committed to the Duke of Alfron, with all his men which were as many.

The

The third led the Kings of Armenia and Telsfany. The fourth conducted Sabion of Trebento. And the fifth governed a brother of the Dukes called Sallatel of the Valley, and for himself he would have none. The Prince Perianeo ordered his Troops in six Battalions, and every one of fifty thousand, and gave order that the other fifty thousand, with all the footmen should assault the City, which were above forty thousand, with so many Military Engines, that they made sure account to lay it level with the ground, with utter desolation of all the Knights at their first Encounter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The cruel battle fought between the Dukes Camp, and the Soldans Troops, and what therein hapned: with the strange acts the Emperor Don Bellanço performed, and the terrible assaults given to the City.

The cold gloomy Winter being over, blown with the warm approach of the waington Spring, wherein the amorous passions in the hearts of love-appetited men, began to stir up the almost extinguished flames, and cherish in them that hoped for little remedy for their grief, continually contemplating in the perpetual captivity of their alienated joyes; when Perianeo the Persian Prince, determining speedily to terminate these wars in strong battalions, drew forth all his men in field, which were so gallant and brave, as never any was seen in those parts with such diversity of devices, watchtowers, Arquebuses and Flags about their spears displayed in the Air, made a most gallant show together, with the brightnes of their armor, and the Sun beams reberberating on them, seemed so many Chrystalline glasses, and the clamorous noise of such multitudes being so wilde, required a Captain of no less valour than his they had. Others though they were very quiet, yet the neighing and trampling of their Horses, with their spears guiding them, raising such rebounding Echo, that they could not hear one another.

The Emperor Don Bellanço, like the man that had been in far more dangerous Enterprizes then these, taking with him

the Prince Arileo, (the better to range about the battle) drew in field his furious Squadrons, and perceiving the Sun when he rose shined against his enemies faces, blazing their eyes with his brightness: which fell out well to his advantage, and not wishing to lose any opportunity, passing to the foremost Squadron, with furious manner commanded they should set upon them; keeping themselves together, least their adversaries breaking through them should disorder their ranks. And thereupon conching their Lances, encountered their Enemies that were so blinded with the Sun, that they saw them not come. But the Emperors men so bravely gave the onset, that their adversaries could not break their Files on no side; whereupon the slaughter was so great, that in less then half an hour that Squadron was wholly overcome, and leaving behind them above 30000. slain and wounded. The valiant acts that the Emperour in the mean time performed, are hard to believe: he with such valiancy broke through the middle of those ranks, as the reapers used in July to reap the Harvest of their ripened grain, so he left on the ground so many Head by Head, that none durst confront him. The Prince Periano seeing the disorder of his men, took with him Don Fermosel, and the two Brothers, Grisaleo, and Gramalis of Thrace, with thirty monstrous Giants, and past to the second Squadron, and gathering the remnant of his dispersed men, encountered the Emperour, commanding all his Troops together to assault the other side of the battle. But the Emperour quickly perceiving his meaning, and calling Florispiano, sent him to tell the Duke Alfron, he would command the whole battle to unite himself with him, giving no time to his adversaries to recover the advantage they had over them; and that it should be with greatest speed possible, for therein consisted the dayes victory, ere the Sun mounted aloft.

Which was done so suddenly, that they almost met their Enemies. The Persian Prince perceiving what his Adversaries had done, fearing to be put to flight, commanded all his Squadrons to do so, and calling Sabian of Trebento (which then entered the battle) thinking him to be knight of the golden Image because he did wear his armour, conched his Lance against him, who did the like, meeting with such force, that they were forced to

to hold by their Horses necks. Perianeo alighted to kill him, but Sabian that was already on his feet, gave him so great a blow that he staggered four steps backwards; yet so many laid upon him with such heavy blows, that though he valiantly defended himself, yet hardly had he escaped with life, if that the noise had not brought the Emperoz, with the Princes Contimeliano, and Arfileo, Florispiano, the Duke Alfron, and the King of Armenia, with many other chosen knights. On the other side, there arrived the Soldan with twenty Gyants in his company; with him also came Coroliano and Boraldo, where there began so great a fight, that all the other battle was nothing in comparison of that. But the courageous Emperoz seeing his dear Sabiano in such perill, in despite of them all went where he was fighting, and not knowing who Perianeo was, overturned him to the ground with his Horse butt, and also tumbling down a Gyant, took his Horse and gave it Sabiano, saying, mount upon this Horse knight, if you mean to live: which he did very lightly, though he was sore wounded, and with their mortal blows, they quickly cut their passage through their enemies. The Prince Perianeo with extreme rage seemed like a chafed Bear, taking a Horse, turned against him who had overturned him; but ere he did it, the Soldan and the Duke Alfron meeting, and knowing each other, discharged the such blows upon themselves, that their Heads were both wounded, from whence came much blood. The Duke had incurred much danger if the Emperoz had not arrived with his company, who knowing the Soldan, came so nigh, that raising his sword to strike him on the Head, being so close unto him, did no other wise, but with the Hilt through him off his Horse; and going after to kill him, was over-reached backwards by the Prince Perianeo with so cruel a blow, that he had near fallen down. Coroliano wounded him also upon the left Shoulder. Whereupon there began so cruel a fight between them, that on both sides four thousand knights lost their lives. On this side where the Emperoz was, his men held out courageously with long fighting. But on the other side the Emperozs men lost their advantage, being unable to resist their Enemies. At this time the assault given to the City being so fierce, that infinite of men died, that currents

of blood ran through the field; and being left without to defend the City, it easily might have been taken. But there came a knight to the Emperour, and said: Withdraw your self sir, unless you will have us all destroy'd, for they within the City have need of present help. Is it possible (said the Emperour) assure your self (replied the knight) if the City be taken, we are utterly undone. But the Emperour gathering his men in form of Pyramids, defended them in such sort, that they entered safely into their Trenches, where the Emperour leaving sufficient Guard, made most of his men enter the City to defend; where, because the assault of the wall might somewhat slacken, opened one of the Gates, which he and the Phenician Prince, and Florispiano valourously kept, by whose hands many there dyed, with ten of the terriblest Giants in all the adverse Camp. But being overtaken with the darkness of the night, they returned to their Tents; the like did the Emperour, King, and Princess, leaving a good guard in the City, returned to the Palace, where they were receiv'd with much joy by the Princess Persiana and Aurora, the one for grief to see those wars, the other wanting the presence of her dear friend, the Prince Don Bellianis. But supper being ended, the Emperour withdrawing himself to his Chamber, was taken apart by the Princess Aurora, who said unto him.

I beseech your Majesty tell me what is become of Don Bellianis, for I fear some disastrous accident has befallen him: The Emperour to comfort her, told her all that had happen'd in the valley of the three Fountains, and how the sage Bellona had taken him with her. Now am I glad (said the Princess) for I am assured he will no harm in her company: and so giving one another the good night, departed: the Emperour to his chamber, and she to hers, with the Princess Floribellae Ladies who were very sorrowful for the absence of the knight of the Golden Image. The Princess told them, the wise Bellona had taken him with her, which were some better news to them. It came next supply unto the Soldan, with which he every day assaulted the City, sometimes winning, and sometimes losing, as in such accidents is often seen. But they within the City receiving no aid, had commonly the worst. Where we leave them

them, till we have dilated the strange adventures of the Knight of the Golden Image, concluded by the wise woman.

C H A P. XL.

What hapned the Knight of the golden Image, going with Bellona : and how he proved the adventure of Brandezar on the Nyconian Mountains.

In manner aboue expressed, the Knight of the Golden Image possed with such stoutness, that by the next morning Sun, he found himself upon a high Mountain, the barrenest that ever was seen, and turning to the sage Bellona, with whom thither he had not spoken, said unto her, Tell me Lady, what Country is this where we are, for I assure you I never saw worse. She are now (replied she) in the Kingdom of Egypt, on the Mountains of the King Nycan, and here must you end an adventure, which will be for your eternall benefit, exceeding all that ever you have done. And therefore know that this Kingdom in times past being the mightiest Monarchy over the world many years; in which time there swayed the Empire a worthy Knight called Nycan, by whose name this Mountain is called. This King was at war with another, named Brandezar, Emperor of Babylon, who so pursued him, that he was faine to immure himself within a strong City hard by the river Euphrates, where Brandezar begirt him with a fearful siege, and hoping of no remedy to obtain his liberty, was driven to use his Art, being the greatest Magician in his time that ever had been before him, and resolved to do what you shall now hear.

One night by his Art he went to Brandezars Camp, and caused him to be brought upon this Mountain: But first he called his Subjects together, and counselled them to compound with those Caldeans and Babylonians, for he had determined to leave them, because his enemies should not execute their revenge on him. His Subjects, that greatly loved him, with great sorrow intreated him to stay, & so how they would spend their lives in his service. But he promising them quickly to return, assuring them he would ease them of their grief caused by Brandezar. And so he did: for coming thither, he wrought

such Enchantments upon him, that he remained in the greatest torments that any tongue can express: and thinking that if by his Enchantments he lost his understanding and senses, he should not be redressed at his pleasure, resolved to leave him in his perfect wits: and for that cause Enchanted a Ring, with such vertue and Conjuratiō, that he which on his finger wears it, should never be offended with any Enchantment, but enjoy his true senses, with all his Heart could wish, saving bodys imprisonment. This might he well do, as the only man that in this Act intreated Medea, being never equalled in this Science. And a while after, that he knew his Affairs were quietted, minded to return, and descending this mighty Mountain, met with his vallant brother, who in his absence was crowned King.

Nycaon (as is said) meeting him, ran to embrace him. But his brother busie with other imaginations, was greatly displeased to see him, fearing he should lose that mighty Empire by coming, closed within him and stabbed him till he dyed, and after commanded his followers to say they found him so there, which they did. And he remained King, and Nycaon was buried at this Mountain side.

That which you need at this present time, is to end this Adventure, and to take the King from the Emperors Brandezar, which you must do in a dear employ, and without it you shall live the basest life that can be thought on. And because you shall have the greater desire to attempt it, I tell you the sage Frithon did obtain all those things you saw to disturb your battle, and is now gone into the City of Babylon, for he knoweth by his Art, that if at this present, he get not in his power the Princess Florisbella, to give her to his friend the Princess Perianeo of Persia, he after shall not easily obtain her (at least by force) and therefore intends he by one means or other to have her: for the Princess Perianeo very shortly: Therefore it behoves her to have that King, that his determination may be frustrated. And if from the same Emperour you can take the Armour he wears, it would greatly aball you; for he that wears it, cannot be molested by any Enchantment whatsoever, nor be known unless he will himself.

You

Don habe told me wonders (said Don Bellianis :) and is this mans skill so great, that he can force the Princess Florisbella against her will, and give her to the Prince of Persia ? Doubt it not (replied Bellona) for more then this can be perform : and believe me, you shall sustain for this cause great travel, and therefore let us not defer the passing time.

Here I commit you to God, leading you to the valour of your Heart, to finish what you have to do, and take this way which will bring you to the place, for I must go no further with you.

Don Bellianis taking his leave of her, descended down that way so fast, that he quickly saw before him a strong and well walled Castle, and looking about could find no Porch or Portal to enter into it. But going to the other side of it, he asped a little mouth of an obscure Cave : and looking down into it, he thought it descended into the Infernal Pit. And also before it he saw a great Pillar of fine Crystal, so transparent, that it seemed to take his light from the Suns own light that then shined on it, were certain Letters made with rich Rubies, to this effect.

The Inscription of the first Pillar.

The strange Lodgings of Brandezar in remembrance of Nycaons great revenge, chief in the Magick Art shall be concealed from all men till the strongest Lion conducted by the little Wolf, shall with extream necessity in search of my skill, hither arrive. Whose valour must excell the force of my monstrous Guardians, leaving all his fine tempered Armour at the entrance of my Cave, if he be adorned with Vertue and Fortitude. And thou couragious Knight, that will this adventure try, must arm thy self with nought but the warlike vertue of thy magnanimous heart.

Don Bellianis having read the Letters, made no other adoe, then if he had seen none, but animating his resolution, drew forth his sword, and would have entred the Cave. but ere he was aware, it vanished from his sight. O God (said he) what strange things be these, Is it possible I must without Armour pass through so fearful a place. And thinking it towardsze to
Cc 3

linger

linger so long, presently armed himself, resting in his Hols and Doublet, and having his Sword in his Hand, kist it, and laid it down, and commended his safety to the Almighty, as a man that had been going to buckle with death. And considering with himself, that in the accomplishment of that adventure, consisted the utter loss, or lacking liberty of his Lady; fearless he cast himself into the Cave, wherein he scarce had set his feet, but he thought he descended into the most lowest Center of the Earth; sometimes striking his Head, sometimes his Feet against the sides thereof, that he was so bruised, he felt not himself; and when he came to the bottom, he lighted with so great a fall, that he thought he was beaten to pieces: and rising with no small pain thereof, looked to see where he was, but could discern no more then in the dark night, closed within an obscure Dungeon; and searching on all sides for light, at last he espied a little Hole from whence there issued so very little, that he could not almost see his Hands. But he was scarce at it, when he felt himself drawn backward with such force, that he had almost tumbled with his Shoulders on the Earth; and turning to see who pluckt him back, he saw him to be a mighty Gyant having in his Hand a most sharp and puissant Battle-Axe, with him came two Centaures, on either side each of them led a Lion, the fiercest that ever he saw, they all came toward him with their puissant blows, upon his Head, but he stepping back escaped them all. Whereupon the Centaures unchained their Lions, who presently ran upon him, and one thinking to rent his body with his sharp paws, leapt at him. But he stretching forth his strong Arms, caught him by the neck, and choaked him. At this time received he two such cruel blows, that he was constrained to set his knees on the ground, shedding much blood. And seeing the Gyant hard by him, closed with him to wounding his Axe out of his Hands, whereon he cast his mighty strength, the Gyant perceiving his intent did also lay fast hold on him, where the Centaures encompassed him, both striving to draw him from the Gyant, where there was seen the most unequallest wrestling that ever was heard of.

Don Bellianis still persisting in his purpose, was so oppressed with their several enchanted forces, that he often lost his breath,
and

and they making the Cave to tremble with the whose echoes of their resounding clamors; but the Prince setting the utmost of his strength, wrencht the Faulchion out of his Hand, and going to strike the Centaures, he saw them all at that instant vanish from his sight, which moze amazed him then any thing else; and seeing a little pair of stairs besoze him, mounted up with as great courage, having that Faulchion, as if with all his armes, he had been armed.

And having ascended the stairs, he saw a fair Hall, to which he should passe by so straight a way, that unarmed he could have gone through it, where there was many armed Knights that kept the passage with their naked swords. These were of those that were Enchanted with Brandezar, being of the strongest then living, whom Nycaon left for the Emperors Guard, with no other intent then to lose their lives, ere he should be taken away, or kill him that there should enter. Which DonBellianis seeing, and that he must of necessity pass through; with an invincible Heart with Faulchion in his Hand cast himself amongst them, where he no sooner came, but two of them setting their shoulders against him, most bravely made him go three or four steps back, wounding him grievously on the Legg, and on his Head; and being unarmed had almost killed him.

Don Bellianis seeing the strength of the Knights to be so great determined to behave himself otherwise with them, and returning again to the door, struck at them divers times, thinking they would give back, but they had no other care but to offend and defend, not stirring any way. Whereat the Prince warding their blows with his Faulchion, drew one of them unto him by his Shield, with such Dauntty strength, as made him headlong tumble at his feet, and took his Shield from him, and with it about his arm, rusht among all those Knights in such a cruel fight, leaping on all sides to thrust their blows. In this manner lasted their fight above three hours, that in the end the Prince so behaved himself, that he overcame them all, which were above thirty, leaving them all breathless in the Hall. He entred into another lodging next to that, being wounded in twenty places, and thinking it no wisdom to go through such a place disarmed, turned back, and buckled about him one of the

dead Knights Armour, and so went forward till he came to another stair, and ascending it, He saw on the top thereof, an ugly and Infernal Sponser, which with such force came upon him that he tumbled down those Steps he had gone up, with so great a fall, that in all that day he had not felt such pain, resting so feeble, that he scarce had strength to stand up. But burning in the flames of ire for that which befell him, mounted up again with more advised resolution, least the like might happen to him again. And being at the stair Head, he saw the fearful sponser accompanied with a Horrible Dragon, which would have thrown him down, but he leaning his back against a wall and set the pommel of his sword to his breast, and the point toward the Dragon expecting his encounter, which was so mighty, that his own force gave him his death: for running upon the sharp sword, it pierced him quite through. But the fierce encounters he received of both those Beasts, so bereft him of strength and senses, that he was fain to sit down upon the stairs. Where returning unto his remembrance, he found himself in a fair large green park, in midst whereof was erected a gallant Pillar, like that he saw at the Caves mouth, whereon there was written these words in Caldean Letters.

The Inscription of the second Pillar.

What haughty Knight soever, whose high valour hath hither brought by the Supreme courage of his heart, let him enter by that door, where he shall find the end of his demand, if he excel in strength the mighty Emperor Brandezar, whose puissant forces never any in ancient ages equalled.

Don Bellianis that longed with desire to terminate with a happy end that Adventure, went to the Portal that the Letters shewed him.

CHAP. XLI.

The cruel battle fought between Don Bellianis, and the Emperor Brandezar, with whose death the adventure was ended.

Through the which he was scarce entered, but he heard the pitifullest laments that ever was heard proceeding from a Knight

Knight that suffered some great torments, and hearkning from whence the voice might come, he past forthward, entering into a Chamber, where he saw a Knight armed in a fiery armour, that seemed to burn him. Round about him were many Snakes and Adders, with many other venomous worms that bit all his body over, and these holding him fast, there came two mighty Basilisks, which would cast upon him all the poison and blood in their body. Yet saw not Don Bellianis, who with fiery buttons feared his flesh, which penetrated the very bone: the intolerable pain whereof, made him breathe forth these lamentable cries, and began to complain in this manner.

O unhappy Brandezar, the most unfortunate that ever breathed on the Earth. May it be the last giber of unconstant Happiness, the blind guide of the round revolving wheeled chance (for the great unhappiness and perpetuity of languishing pains and plaguing grief) should subjugate under thy command, the vast Empire of Babylon, Persia, and Trebisond, knitting thy joints with mightier forces then any in the universal world: to give thee now so high a fall, overthrowing thee in this present everlasting misery, and put thee in such continual torments by the hands of thy greatest enemy, and that death hath not the power to banquish thee. O is it possible, that he that for a God was on Earth adored, should now endure such Hellish pains? O cruel death, why comest thou not to crave possession of thy due tribute? O life, why dost thou haunt me, being haunted with such contrarious fates of maligning, and unhappy fortune? And with these words, renewing his old laments, so melted the Princes tender Heart, that he fell in a deep consideration of the mutability of Fortune, with remembrance of the high Majesty of that Emperour, being the puissantest both in possessions and Countries, as of proper strength, that in his age I have none to equal him: whose life and Chivalries he had read being a Child. But recording that was he whom he must conquer, stepped forthward, wherast the two Basilisks that lay by Brandezar, leapt about him, and so fast held him, that he could not stir: the like did all the other Serpents, which so cruelly bit him, that they made his bones shrink within his Armour. Don Bellianis began to strike on all sides, but it was

D

in

in pain, for all his strokes wounded but the Arm, which he per-
 ceiving, procured with more strength to pass away. Here was
 his labour doubled to no great purpose, yet with often falling
 and rising he was so toyled, that at length he arrived to the
 Chair where the Emperour sat, which somewhat eased him, for
 all those cruel blows left him. But Brandezar that by him saw
 that might, thinking it was his mortal for the King Nyeon,
 he took him him so bravely betwixt his arms, that he easily
 drew him to him. Don Bellianis letting fall his Faulchion, got
 hold on the Emperour, though he more willingly would have got
 from him, because of the extreame heat that proceeded from his
 Arms, and so continued in their wrestling till they overbore
 the Emperours Chair, and so parting from one another, Bran-
 dezar drew forth his sword, and the Prince took his Faulch-
 ion, and began so dangerous a fight as never was seen in so
 short a time, abundantly wedding their blows. Don Bellianis
 at this time was in extreame perill, for that the Emperours
 strength was incomparable, and himself sore wounded, which
 he perceiving, awaited a blow of the Emperour which threwe the
 remnant of his shield to the ground, and wounded him on the
 arm, but he gave him a terrible blow on the Leg, that Bran-
 dezar could no longer stand thereon. But losing none of his
 courage, defended himself upon his knees, that made Don Bel-
 lianis discharge his blows so fast, thinking to end the conten-
 tion with one blow on his Head, the Emperour warded it with
 his sword, and so bravely thrust at him, that had it taken him
 full, it might have ended his life, yet the various sword ran
 through his right side, rending his flesh with the greatest wound
 he has received all that day.

Don Bellianis coming at the mouth for anger of the terrible
 wound, struck at the Emperour with both hands, and cut his
 thigh in sunder, whereat he fell down, and within a while dy-
 ed. At whose death, there began so horrible a noise in all the
 Castle, with so monstrous an Earthquake, that Don Pellianis
 fell in a Trance, but recovering his senses, felt himself well
 and lusty without any wound, seeing neither signe nor memo-
 ry of Castle or Cave. But before him lay dead the Emperour
 Brandezar, and his knights, which greatly grieved him, there
 also

also he found his Armoz he had left, and putting off thble he had on, armed himself with the Emperors, which were the richest till that hour seen. They were all green, garnished with many Basilisks of gold and Azure, with many unvaluable Pearls of exceeding brightness, and giving him good Sword, went to see Emperoz for the Ring the wise Woman had told him of, which he took from a right finger of his right Hand: the preciousness of which Gem much amazed him, the stone of it was a little Carbuncle, yelding as much light as four burning Torches. But scarce had he taken the Ring, but hard by he saw a Tombe as fast as ever he saw any, set upon twelve Pillars of Chyzikal, which sustained an Altar made of the richest Emeralds in all the Oriental Regions. Upon every Pillar stood four Angels, holding four burning Torches that never waxed. Upon the Sepulcher was a Shield held up by two great Gylfons, with the Arms of the Emperoz Brandezar, and about them were written these words.

The Inscription of the Shield upon the Emperors Sepulchre.

Nycaon King of Egypt, chief Magician of his time, in perpetual memory of his revenge, for the destruction made of his kingdom by Brandezar Emperoz of Babylon, Persia, and Trebizand, hath erected this Monument, wherein after the many torments sustained by his skill, being vanquished he lieth dead by his hands, that in valour excelleth all Knights in the Universe. Here shall he lye buried in this lasting monument till the Son of the brave Lion, with his force shall overcome the power of my Art, obtaining the sight herein inclosed, not using the rare valour of his heart.

On the other side of the Tomb was set another Shield, expressing the manner of the Emperors Enchantment, and for what cause Nycaon had so done, with the manner of his liberty by Don Bellianis, who attentively beholding that wondrous work with great joy for the obtained Ring, he espied Bellona in great haste come to him, in manner as he left her, and demanded how he did; Very well (replied he) for I have accomplished what you commanded me, yet am much amazed at what here is, for having seen none to do it. Here lieth buried the Empe-

for Brandezar, and so greatly desire to see what is within. What may not be, answered (he) for our saying may much prejudice us, yet I long to try it (said he) but I will leave it, seeing you will have it so. And one of the Spaniards that came with her gave him a shield according to his Armour, but in the middle of it, was his accustomed device. Don Bellianis greatly rejoiced to see the Picture of his Lady. And so departed in the manner that they came, in short time passing many miles. But here we leave them returning to the great Magician Wizard.

C H A P. LXII.

What Frisbon wrought after the two Princes battle, to get into his power the Princess Florisbella, and how she was succoured by the Knight of the golden Image.

The Battle being ended between the two Princes, as before is mentioned; the Sage Frisbon having cured the Prince Perianco of his wounds, returned to his Habitation in the desert of death: where calling to his remembrance the love that Perianco did bear the Princess Florisbella, but she little regarded, and wherein he continually languished. He rack about with his Conjurations by which he came to know, that it under the domination of the Planet Mercury that then reigned, he got not into his Hands the beautiful Princess Florisbella, he should after suffer mortal torments: for her sake, yet could he not learn whether the Persian Prince would marry her or no. And in these tumultuous times, thinking easily to get and present her to the Persian Prince before the end of these wars, taking the necessaries to employ his Art, arrived in little time within the superbius of Babylonian walls; where he raised a Tent, the richest and katelpest that ever was seen, with so many Gallant Devices, that it admired every beholder. But no sooner was it seen, but it was told the Soldan, who with the Empress Silviana his wife, and the Princess Florisbella his Daughter, came forth to see it, greatly wondering at the richness thereof. From whence they heard so sweet and melodious a Consort of Musick, that it ravished their delicate senses: and after so many Trumpets sounded, as if some pitch

held

field were to be fought, which being done, there issued out of the Tent, four beauteous Ladies, cloath'd in long rich robes of Embroider'd work, they were led by the Hands by four valiant Knights clad in green Armour, with many golden Stars thereon, with their Helms laced on their Heads. Which Troops went towards the gallant Princess Florisbella, that was discoursing with her Father about the Tent, and being before her, they all knel'd, refusing to rise, both at her and the Emperors intreaties. And one of the Ladies with a clear voice that all might hear her, thus began.

High and mighty Potentate, Emperor of Babylon, Sovereign Monarch of the Oriental Regions, and most renowned Soldan, to whose Supreme command the universal Globe of all the Dyed Earth, might deservedly owe tributary duty, exalting all mortal things in Honor and bounty, by maintaining equal and upright Justice thorow his vast Empire, with continual glory of Dauntless Chivalry, daily Honoured in his Courts, whose magnificent estate, the immortal Gods do emulate through the incomparable beauty of his Excellent Daughter, so; whose sake his Empire shall still augment with eternal Happiness, to perpetual ages. Know that the dear Hope to finde redress so; our troubled thoughts, hath brought us to this imperial City, and if our Hopes be frustrated of their desires, we will return despairing of future remedy so; our griefs, wanting it here, where never any was denyed.

Wherefore of thee, and of this glorious Princess we must obtain a boon before we do explain the cause of our coming. Require what you will (saith the Soldan) so; my desire is so great to know this adventure, that not only one, but twenty I do grant you: and therefore make us partakers of your grievances. Upon this they arose, and the Damzel returning to her former purpose, thus said.

In ponder Tent (most Dread Lord) is the Gallant King Gorgiana of Soria, chief Lord of that Land, whom you well know, being your near Ally, that being in this peaceful Kingdom, ordering of certain Triumphs, wherein himself, with most of his best Knights should be in; thither came many Strangers and Forreiners, brought by the name of his beauteous

daughter, then thought the fairest Lady/ling. And among many that there arrived, she was demanded of her father for wife by the great Magician Herodiano, King of the Isle of Pearls, one of the bravest Giants hitherto seen. But he being informed what he was, and loved him, That his Daughter being too young, was not determined to marry, and therefore craved his pardon. Which answer highly vexing Herodiano, that they being the next day in the ordained Juffs; there appeared on the other side of the field these four Men that here you see, who rushing within the Tourny, in short space overthrowed above a hundred Knights, with such deep wounds, that most of them could no more rise. And they like furious Dragons ran up and down the field, that none durst abuse their fury. Which the King seeing, encountered them with ten Knights, against whom only three went, and the other embraced the King in such cruel manner, that both fell down, and the rest left his Knights deadly wounded:

Then on a sudden, appeared the Tent you ponder see, in which the King was set, with his daughter, and these four Men remained as their keepers, whom no humane power is able to overcome; because they are Enchanted: and in the space of four dayes they vanquished above four thousand Knights that came to liberate their King, which not a little grieved us. but in the end, sending for the counsel of a wise man, a great friend unto our King, we received this answer.

That the imprisonment of the King and his fair Daughter could not be remedied, but by a Lady, whose beauty should exceed the Honourable Princess Meridianaes, and and finding her, she should prove the adventure of the Tent, and the Princess would give her a sword, which in her hand she holdeth, with which those Knights should be vanquished, and the Enchantment ended. And for this effect he would work, that the Tent should be brought where we would wish to have it, where in we four might very safely go, for only these same Knights should be our chief defenders.

In this manner have we in short time travelled most part of Paganism, but never could find any that did surpass the beauty of our Princess Meridiana. And by the way hearing the same

hath propagated through this Eastern world of the rare and excellent beauty of the Princess thy dear Daughter, we are come to intreat thee to suffer this adventure tryed in thy Court, which will no little eternize thy great glory, setting an end to our many toyles, which else we shall sustain. And this is [the] boon which you, and your Excellent Daughter the Princess Florisbella granted us.

The Soldan rested highly astonish'd, at the Ladies tale, greatly pitying the misadventure hapned to the King Gorgiano his Kinsman, desiring to undergo any peril for his liberty, and ensuring the Lady, safe. It greatly grieved me (gracious Lady) that this mischance hath befallen your King, and his Daughter, and if would highly content me, that you may finde remedy in my Court. But tell me the Lady, that probing it, and not ending it, both the incur any danger. Pons (replied she) for we that both not excel the Princess in beauty, may not enter therein, and from the door may you see what is within.

I am contented (said the Soldan) that the adventure be tryed. But I will first see the combating of the Knights; for I believe in my Court there are such that think to save the Ladies that labour. Your will be done (replied the Damzel) though it be better that your Knights do not so endanger themselves, for their toyl will be in vain. Yet for all this will I have it so, said the Soldan.) And thereupon commanded all his Knights, to try the adventure: and the Damzels with their Knights, returned to the Tent; in the entering whereof, it seemed to open in the midst, where straight was seen a Throne with thirty Steps which seemed to be made of pure Crystal, in the middle whereof sat the King Gorgiano in all his Armour, leaning his Head upon his spear, seeming very melancholly; at his right Hand sat the beautiful Princess Mercedian, in like manner as her Father. On the top of the Throne appeared Cupid the blind God of Love, with his bow and Arrowe, whose making was so artificial, that every one thought him alive. At his feet lay a Knight sore wounded with an arrow in his breast, who seemed with one hand to crave mercy, but with the other he held a scroll very lately written with plain Caldean Letters, expressing for what reason the King Gorgiano was imprisoned.

Here

They're arriv'd all the Soldans Knights, above three thousand in number, and were the valiantest in all the whole Empire.

The first that would probe the adventure was a Cousin of his called Bakasano of Numidia, who as it seem'd was chief over the rest, he was armed in rose colour armour, and taking with him two Knights, would have entred the Tent, but the enchanted Knights defended it against them, and at their first encounter ended the first, casting the Soldans Knights on the ground. The Soldan greatly amazed at this sudden exploit, had more desire then before to have the exploit ended; and first commanded the dead and wounded Knights to be carried away, and then wisht the Ladies to try their fortunes, which many did, but none could enter the Tent. Which the Princess Floribella seeing, took by the hand the beauteous Mattarosa her cousin, and said to her, fair Cousin, shall we probe this adventure, although for my part I know I shall do but little: Even as please you, replied the fair Mattarosa, though I perceive you mock us all; but I will try it first, because I will not rest with imagination that you ended it by first probing it, which then will be said you did, being the fairest, and so well known. You are pleas'd to jest, said the Princess. But for the trying of this adventure, I would be glad that you might even take me that danger and fear, and we shall after try the advantage in that other. When Belike (replied the excellent Mattarosa) you will not grant me to be the fairest, though I end the adventure: but seeing it is so, I promise you to find out a Knight to defend it against the whole world. You promise much (said the Princess) but I know no Knight can be hardy as to attempt so haughty an enterprise, unless it be the Knight of the golden Image, whom I know will obtain nothing against me. All this I know (answered the Infant) but I have a Knight in these parts that excels him both in valency and fairness. How know you that (said the Princess) for I never heard any such thing. I tell you (replied the Infant.) To my Fathers Kingdom came one who brought a Letter from the Sophy, Father unto the Prince Perisheo, requiring his aid to be revenged of a subject of his, that with the help of a Knight, called the Knight of the golden Image, had slain his son in law the Prince Don Gallaneo,

603 and had stolen his daughter Persiana, and recounted such
 wonders of this Knight, and of his rare beauty, which hardly
 we believe, but that we were informed thereof by other means.
 And this Knight will I have to defend my beauty, which not-
 withstanding I fear he will not, for I have heard, he beareth
 your Picture graven on his shield. I am struck into great
 amazement (answered the Princess) with your discourse, and
 cannot comprehend that any Knight in the world would be so
 mad, to presume to beautifie his Armour with my Picture.
 And I assure you, if he here arriveth, he shall do much to save
 his Head, in recompence of his presumption. Trouble not
 your self with any such thought (said the Infant) for you
 would much more grieve, if you should see all this place full of
 vanquished Knights in my behalf. In this manner chatted
 these two Princesses of rare beauty, till they approached the rich
 Tent, where their senses were ravished with the rare melodis-
 cious Musick that thence sounded; and parting hands, the beau-
 tious Mattarosa entred the Tent, where one of those Knights
 took her by the hand, and brought her to the steps, whereon the
 Infant courteously began to mount. All the beholders judged
 the adventure ended: which not a little grieved the Prin-
 cess, because she had not first tried it. But she had not ascen-
 ded the third step, when she felt her self staid, and striving to
 go up, she suddenly found her self without the Tent to her
 great grief, because she had not ended the adventure. The
 Princess hereat laughing said, I know not (said Countess)
 why you sought a sword, seeing you must not use any combat-
 ting with me. I know not what to answer (said the pleasant
 Infant) but that no trust is to be reposed in these enchant-
 ments, being onely made according to their authors minde:
 yet try you it, that we may see your merits, for it may be your
 company would lessen my grief. The Princess going to try
 the adventure, she saw entred by the further side of the field,
 a Knight in green Armour, very rich, with many golden Ba-
 gisks thereon, whose gallant disposition more contented her,
 than any she ever saw. In his shield was drawn her Picture
 so natural, that it seemed alive: by his side stood an ancient
 Lady maide, holding in her hand a naked sword, so bright,
 that

that it lookt like a transparent glasse of fine Chryſtall set against the ſun, which ſhe ſeing, ſkied her ſelf. The Knight and the Lady went ſtraight to the Tent. But Friſtone, ſeing them at firſt enter into the field, began to make his conſiderations, not knowing who they were, nor to what end they came, nor never could know it, becauſe Don Bellianis had on the Emperors Brandezar's armour: and the ſage Bellona, which was ſhe that was with him, carried the ſame Emperors ſword: yet he ſtraight knew the effect of their coming, and beſieping to have no let in his intent, tranſformed himſelf into a moſt monſtrous and ugly Gifſin, and went ſtraight to the Princeſſe, and taking her by the arms, would have gone away with her. But the Knight of the Baſilisks arrived ſo ſuddenly, that he had no time to do it, and with his ſword ſtriking at him, cut all his feathers, and wounded him on his ſhoulder, and the good ſword not onely wrought this, but alſo made the ſage Friſtone, ſo to return to his natural ſort, falling preſently on the ground, bleeding apace: whom the enchanted Knights ſtraight took and conveyed within the Tent, Don Bellianis ſpeaking to the Princeſſe ſaid, Faint not, ſurpreſſe of another heart, but animate your ſelf, ſit you be free from him that ſo great harm would have done you. The Princeſſe ſaid ſo with ſuch amazement by the ſeet, that ſhe knew not in what world ſhe was. The like hapned to the Infant Mattaroſa. But Don Bellianis being advertiſſed of Bellona what he ſhould do, ſeet to the Tent, where he was aſſaulted by the four enchanted Knights, with ſuch haraſſals, that that they put him in great extremity, ſo though by virtue of his ſword their enchantment preſailed not againſt him, yet were they very valiant and courageous. But the Prince, ſeing himſelf beſore his Lady, and conſidering that to be the firſt baſſel in her ſervice, ſo handled his adverſaries, cutting armour, leggs and all, himſelf ſuſtaining great labour, and the loſs of blood. The Princeſſe trembled ſo very fear, thinking ſhe ſhould be put in danger again. The Infant Mattaroſa that was moſt darreſt ſaid, What think you (fair Couſin) of yonder Knight? Surely, I think it is he that I told you of, ſo by the virtue of his ſhield, and the report of him, I do not doubt it. His ſhall

now know it (replied the Princess :) But let us intreat our gods to free him from the danger he is in for our sakes. And therewith looked to the fight, wherein the Knight has brought his adversaries to such a pass, that they had almost slain, whereupon there issued out of the Tent two mighty Giants, that assaulted the Prince, giving him such blows that they made his head like the saddle pommel: but he with double force (increased with his rage) so behaved him with them, that he threw two of the Knights dead to the ground. And seeing the battel so long endured, resolved to enter within the Tent in despite of them, knowing that if he did it, the fight would cease, and the enchantment end. The Knights and Giant perceiving it, laid fast hold on him, but he being of mighty and unmatched forces, manag'd their power, went in with them, and with his sword he gave so hard a blow upon the keys, that he made a dark smook like a thick mist ascend upwards, which so blinded the beholders eyes, that they saw not one another. But by means of the sage Bellona it banished, there remaining no memory of Tent nor adventure, save the two Knights that lay dead on the earth. Who were able to set down the amazed admiration that every one conceived seeing these strange things, and they were in such case as if that had been the fearful day of doom: specially the Soldan seeing all that had hapned, who went to speak unto the Knight, that was already mounted on his horse.

C H A P. LXIII.

What the Knight of the Basilisks pass, with the Soldan of Babylon, after the battel, and with the Princess *Florisbella* departing unknown, promising speedily to return and serve her.

The Prince Don Bellianis, seeing the adventure ended, according to his desire mounted on horseback to depart, for Bellona would have him do, but perceiving the Soldan coming toward him, he thought it discourtesie to part without speaking, Alas, and seeing he was come nigh him, setting his hand on his saddle, alighted with admirable lightness, and

prostrating himself, demanded his hand to kisse. The Soldan
 against all intreaties did also dismount, shewing the like fear-
 telle that the Knight did, for he was a Prince absolute in all
 courtly behaviour, to whom the Soldan thus said; I cannot
 comprehend the cause excellent Knight, that having brought to
 end the greatest and noe less strange adventure hitherto seen, li-
 berating us from such danger you should depart, bereaving us
 of your desired conversation, by so sudden departure from our
 Court which I would unwillingly have you do, though you
 were newly put in as great danger as the last you undertook in
 our behalfs, notwithstanding the Gods defense: And farther I
 say, if at my request you dang to do it, withstanding my authori-
 ty, I shall be convicted by her, for whose remee our Immoztal
 Gods, I think brought you hither. Where he embraced him with
 love as the benefit received bound him to. Don Bellianis was
 struck into such an amaze, that he knew not how to be resolved,
 thinking if he did not obey the Soldan, the unkindness would
 be greater then the service he had done him: And on the other
 side, he considered, that he might incur no less danger in disco-
 vering himself, not knowing Bellona's intent, in so concealing
 him. But to salve all the best he might, made this reply, It doth
 not a little grieve me, most mighty Lord, that I cannot do you
 the service my heart desires, because it is not in my power, being
 brought by yonder Lady that you see, without whose leave I
 may dispose of nothing: but binding my duty to your service for
 ever as the Person that most Honour on the Earth deserbeth.
 While they were thus talking the Sage Bellona came to them,
 and with her the two sole excellencies of beauty, the Princesses
 Florisbella and Mattarosa, with such rare brightness that it
 would obscure the midday Sun in all his pride. The above all
 fairest the Princess Florisbella, sole obdurate prettification of an
 Earthly object, came with such gallant semblance, that no hu-
 mane heart could have been so obdurate, but would have melt-
 ed at her sight: she was clad in a white Satten Gown, with a
 Peticoat of the same, all cut upon most rich cloath of Gold, and
 every cut tacked with a great Orient Pearl, which were so ma-
 ny and so well set, that they made so strange a work, that the
 curiousness thereof could not be discerned, the Sleeves were
 long

long and large, hanging to the Ground closed with a fine
 Gold, set with the same Pearls, and lined with the same cloath
 of Gold, hang out with many unvaluable Jewels; her Amber
 hair dishevelled over her shoulders, hung backward gathered to-
 gether behind her Ears, upon which she had a Coronet, garnish-
 ed with Diamonds, Rubies, Sapphires, and Pearls, not more
 meet then that whole City, beset on her Carknet, perched a
 Carbuncle as big as two Walnuts, that yielded so much light
 as four torches burning in the dark. Her Corset was so open
 that plainly might be discerned the rare excellency of the Crea-
 tor of all things, in the pure wonder of the Sun, out-shining
 whiteness of her Breast, adorned with inestimable Gems. And
 although she thus came attired, more beauty did glorifie her
 garments, from the divine nature of her face, then was her
 Beauty graced by the brightness of those Stones, such sole appae-
 ring did make her absolute, so no artificial work could imi-
 nish or augment her beauty. The stately passage of her Feet, no
 more seemed to move them, than gentle blast of gentle blowing
 wind. The Prince Mattarosa was attired in that manner
 whose perfection has no equal, in the absence of her fair Cousin.
 In this manner arrived they where the Soldier was talking
 with the Prince Don Bellianis, who seeing the excellency of his
 Lady, that far excelled the portature of his Sister, could so con-
 founded with admiration, that his brave heart unable to resist so
 fierce an assault all covered with a cold sweat, as if that were
 the last moment of his life, lost his senses, that had not the Sol-
 dier (who thought some mortal wound had caused it) held him
 fast about the neck, he had fallen to the Ground, yet notwithstanding
 he was in such a trance, that he felt nothing that was done
 unto him. Whereat the Princess Florisbella being very sor-
 rowful, knee to him to unlace his shirt. But the Sage Bellona
 quickly running thither, cryed out he should not do it, and im-
 bracing the Prince said, that every one heard, What is the
 matter Knight, that in time when we most need your help, you
 show such weakness, the Prince at her words recovered him-
 self, and greatly ashamed at the accident, replied. you know,
 dear Lady, that I can do neither worse, seeing the hand of cruel
 death knocked at my heart, unless I be succoured with present

remedy. Our Immortal Gods will not permit it, Sir Knight, said Florisbella, that we having received so absolute remedy by the help of your valorous arm, your life should be bereft you, to depart ungratified for your dear merits. Wherefore be answered.

In all humble duty, lower than lowly earth, I kiss your beauteous hands, excellent Princess, for the undeserved labour of your words, whose power hath snell power to cure my decaying life, despairing of all remedy and dear comfort in the whole universe, but by this.

While they were thus talking, the soldier knelt Bellonza, whom with great joy he embraced, he would have kissed his and the Empress's hands; but the soldier would not suffer it.

Why have I, dear friend, kept your self away so long time, not visiting us? for I know no cause you had for it; but now shall you pay for all, not departing so easily as you think. And I pray you tell us who this valorous knight is that comes with you? for I am sure you knew of our distress, seeing you came in to great time of need. The wise woman made this reply.

Wise lady true (Wise Lord) for knowing your danger, and that surely you had lost the Princess your daughter, I undertook this journey, imposing so great a danger upon this knight, as he underwent by our coming: And believe me, his equal lives not this day in the world, and without him my coming had been in vain: and hitherto I did not visit you, because you had no need of me. I believe it, replied the soldier, and now that our joy may be complete, pray make this knight unlace his helm, and remain here some few days, for it would greatly vex me if such a knight should go from my court unknown.

This must be pardoned (said she) for he must depart unknown, and therefore do not importune him about it, for it cannot be otherwise. Whereupon they went whither the two Princesses Florisbella and Marcarola were chatting with Don Bellianis, in treating him to put off his helm. Whereupon the soldier so. If you obtain no more then hitherto you have done of this. And I believe he will depart unknown. He will not so much wrong us (said the Princess) unless he will have us make little account of his aid we received. And seeing he said he will do

what

in'tat this Lady both command him, I hope she will not leave us so unsatisfied in recompence of her long absence. I beseech your Excellency (said Bellona) not to hex your self, nor to give you it be now discover himself, it will cost him his life, in lieu of the pleasure he should do you therein. And let this suffice, which according to our power we have done. But yet in respect of this displeasure, I advertise you that your cousin the Princess Aurora is well (though somewhat, wanting your company) she was left in Persia, with the Ladies you sent to seek her, and thither must we go shortly. This hath greatly comforted me (said she) yet rest not altogether satisfied, wanting the effect of this my desire. I cannot appease the oppression of my grieved heart (most excellent and Imperiall lady) said Don Bellanis, to have so poked the heart of my conviction to a strangers power, that I cannot now, though it were with the certain danger of my life satisfy the dear obedience of your high command: for I have bound my self to anothers will, that I must not do more than what this I say here shall appoint me.

But I do promise and promise you, by our great immortal Oath (having from my liberty) to return with all speed to serve you, and the Soldan your father, in whose I will not part, but by your command; in token whereof, I do beseech you accept this Ring, which cost me no little labour, with abundant loss of my blood to obtain it. Where with you shall be safe and sure of my true accident as this last. And taking off his Countenance discovered the Alabaster whiteness of his hands. The Princess heart was some what amazed, adding more beauty to her beauty, by the rosent tincture of a vermillion blush, not knowing together she should take the Ring which the Knight presented her, thinking she should thereby do him a greater favour than she would. Which the Infant Matarosa perceiving, being greatly satisfied with the Knights behaviour, came unto her, What doth your Highness desire? why do you not accept the precious gift of this valorous Knight? would you be no every day in like danger? which if you desire, I assure you we shall not every day have so good help: for though I sustain some peril, yet was there none that succoured me. Receive then gift Daughter, from the Soldan, for it is no small thing

thing to keep the pledge of so valiant a Knight. All this while the discreet Princess, holding down her eyes gazed on Don Bellianis hand, thinking with her self, that if his face, with the disposition of his body, did agree with it, the whole world could not afford a gallanter or better Knight, of whose valour she was a sufficient witness. And seeing her image in his shield imagined this was the Knight whose praises her Cousin had so inbowed. Whereupon the subtil god of love on a sudden took his revenge, battered by the perfection of her heart, and with such a violent stroke penetrated it, that having no defence nor, no, the shield of reason to withstand it, but unprovided, assaulted by his subtilty, yielded at the first encounter, resting so vanquished, that she never had the power to recover the former liberty of her heart. And the more she thought on him the more she did enquire her self, as the discourse of this present Book mentioeth, for so small a man she thus changed the sight of Don Bellianis caused in her, and with a sudden joy conceived by her thoughts, bying her beauty to make it more fair, with the colour of an orient Ruby. First, thinking that her fathers command, and her counsels persuasions were sufficient enough to shield her from after-segquent scandal, with lowly countenance on both parts she took the Ring, saying, I do receive (of this Knight) this present at your hands, lest it be said, I do deny the gratefulness I owe for the good turn you did, and taking possession of this which is the least, you shall remain bound to that which is the most I mean, your speedy return, to attend the olden my dread Sovereign; and because you shall not forget it, I will keep this as a pledge left me, by you, as also in remembrance of her that against my will leaveth you away, before you have received any sight of question of my father. But before you go, I pray you let us know the dangerous world we have the world in. I do most humbly beseech you (sole possessor of divine excellency, said Don Bellianis) to let me kiss the wonder of your hand; that I may thereby enjoy the fruition of so high a favour as you have done, for the acceptance of so small a gift of so mean a Knight as I am in respect of your Highness, again promising my return shall be so wholly, as the obedience of your commands requireth, unless my hopes be frustrated by death: and turning to Bellianis, entered

reated her, seeing she knew the beginning and end of that adventure, she would fully satisfy the Princess therein. Which he did, in manner already set down. And having done, craved leave to depart, and so kissing the Soldans hand, and the Emperess Silvianæ, had them and the Princesses farewell.

Don Bellianis did the like, with such grief (as any in his case may imagine) leaving his heart with the Princess, and so carrying away hers. The Princess Mattarosa pleasantly said thus unto the Prince, I do believe Sir Knight, that the sage Bellona hath so mastered you, that you speak not but when it pleaseth her: and if it be so, tell it me; for I presume to obtain leave of her, for your tongue to play. Don Bellianis that through his great amazement had not seen her, but seeing her, replied, This hath not been the cause of my silent oversight, (courteous and pleasant Lady) but the imaginations of the sight there seen, which with my sudden departure hath so increased my admiration, and so intrapt me in mine own thoughts that they have suffer'd me not to regard the deserved merits of your worthy person, robbing the power of my speech to confound me more in the deep consideration of my hearts subjection. When belike the fault is very little (answered she) by the speedy redressing of our danger, wearing to god an armour as that. The present blindness (dear Lady, said he) is better to preserve my sight. At your return, you shall explain me this, (said she) for now I do not understand it. Whereupon the brave Prince Don Bellianis mounted on his back not setting his foot in the stirrup, as was his custom, and very gallantly managing him, he made him bend his knees unto the earth; and bending down his own head in sign of his duty, departed in manner as he came, with unspeakable joy, to have so happily finished that adventure before his Lady, to his immortal glory, which were it not temper'd with grief of his departure, it had been enough to kill him. But here we leave him, till further accidents shall refresh his remembrance.

CHAP. XLIV.

What the Princess *Florisbella* did, after the Knight of the golden Image was departed. Of her laments and conference with the Infant *Mattarosa* her Cousin.

THE Princess *Florisbella* remained so amazed with the sudden departure of the new Lover, that so quickly had made a prey of her tender heart, that all her imaginations were on nought but of Don *Bellianis*, and till he went clean out of the field, she accompanied him with her sight, so steadfastly fixing her eyes after him, that had not her cousin called her away, to follow the Soldan and Emperess that were returning to the Court, there she had staid, forgetfull of her self. The Infant *Mattarosa* said unto her by the way, What say you (said cousin) to the great knight? did you ever see in all your life a man of more valour? And trust me, I think it is he I told you of a while before his coming: I greatly desire to see the fairness of his complexion, whether it accorded with the constitution of his body, and gallant behaviour, I know not what I should say (replied the Princess) for he hath seemed so well in my eyes, and though his valour hath freed me from the danger that you saw, great is his presumption not withstanding, to hear my Picture about the world with him, and his discourtesie is no less, to depart unknown to the Soldan my father, and nothing respecting our intreaties, leaving me so discontented, and I had not taken his King had not my father commanded, & you perswaded to it. You have no reason to blame him for it (said her cousin) for he could do no otherwise, being bound unto the contrary by that sage *Mellona*, and I know not what Princess or greater Lady would have refused to bear a service as this knight offer'd you so lib'rally, which you seemed to accept most unwillingly. Speak not of it (answered the Princess) for I had like to have bestowed my self as unthankful in taking it, as he discourteous in not doing what I entreated him. But if he return he shall know the discontent he did me. Assure you, (said her pleasant cousin) if he would be my knight, I would not hammer on these doubts.

If he returns he shall be (answered the Princess) I will yield unto it (said the Infant) if you obtain it without such ceremony as you make, It may be I shall at his return (the Princess made

an.

answer) and therefore rest contented, I perceived no such intent in him (replied the Infant.) In such like discourse went they with the Moldan and Empress till they arrived at the Palace, where the Princess, saying she felt her self discompos'd, left her cousin and her ladies, withstanding alone unto her chamber, to consider at more leisure of him that so displeased her: and staying the day after her, with a penitive heart unable to resist her passions, she cast her self upon her bed, and with tears trickling down her cheeks, with sighs that interrupted the clear passage of her speech, she said with a soft voice, Unhappy Princess Florisbella, what unlucky hour was that wherein thou dost go to see that cursed adventure, that hath been the cause of these thy torments and anguish of heart, making thee hereafter bond-slave to grief, and in the end gain thy freedom by death. Ah dearest Ladies, fatal was the moment, wherein I granted you the boon you craved, to gain for my good will, so many pains. O sage Bellona, if from one danger you have liberated me, in a greater you have intrapped me. And I do beseech the gods to terminate these woes with my untimely death. For what a-balls it me, to be commanders over so many Kings, Princes, Lords and Signiores, if the fatal destinies of my unhappy chance have tied the liberty of my heart unto a knight unknown, of whom I saw but armour and his horse, neither know I what he is, denying to discover his face. O immortal gods, if this ye have order'd in the heavenly spheres of your decrees, why did ye not also summon me to appear before your celestial thrones, to hear your cruel sentence given against me? But what say I, disgraced, that I am? For it may be, that knight is one of our gods. For who could else have had the power to do what he did in such a short time, and so enthrall the quiet peace of my heart? O Princess, how have the the gods revenged thee, because I never regarded thy high merits, punishing my contempt by that knight that would not shew me his face, whom peradventure you may be he, that would not disclose your self, being displeased by my father, but ah me, thou art not he. For thy words never so penetrated my heart, nor the sage Bellona (thy great enemy, by reason of her cousin the Princess Aurora) had not brought thee in her company. But ah me, distressed soul, be it

as it will, enely I must languish in perpetual torments, and in the end be so for no reimsay of any.

While the Princess thus complained, her cousin Mattarosa, that by her sudden withdrawing, did suspect what it might be, that came through a secret way where she was, and said to her, bear her, but could understand nothing what she said, and greatly wondering at this novelty, she went away, and came to her chamber door, & knocked, which awakened the Princess out of her lament, who wiping her eyes, order'd her self the best she could, open'd the door, & let her in, but her cousin, seeing her in that case, dissembled what she thought, and said, How now cousin, both the fear of the last adventure last so long that it so troubles you, is it because you did no more good therein than I, or is it the discontent you conceiv'd of the discourteous knight of the last, tell me it, and we will procure him to redress the wrong. The Princess covering her face, with a blush like the morning sun rising in the East, answered, Do not put me in more danger than there was in the last, dear cousin, for you make me think you know that knight, and to imagine that by your means I am snared in the deceit of yonder enchantment. In this manner pass'd these Ladies many days, discoursing on nothing but the deeds of the knight of the Basilisks, so that they called him, by reason of the armour he did wear, and the Princess Florisbella, every day with longing desire expressing his return, still continued in her usual laments, wherein her cousin one day taking her, would needs know the cause of them, which she by great importunity declared, which was no small comfort to her after woes. But here we leave them till their time, with the Soldan, greatly doubting whether this wasthe Prince of Persia, which he confirm'd to be, because he would not discover himself. But his Lords perswaded him to the contrary, saying, This knight better became his armour than he. But now the story turns unto the Prince Brianell, whom we left in his journey towards Antioch.

CHAP. XLV.

What Don Brianell did after he was gone from Bollerá, and how he was informed of the state of Antioch.

With great desire to procure the good success of his Ladies command, departed Don Brianell to Antioch, thinking

thinking that to effect so weighty a matter as that his foundation was weak. But continuing his voyage, meeting with no adventure worthy the rehearsal, at length arrived at a City not above 12 miles from Antioch, called Miriapa, where he resolved to stay, and learn the state of the Kingdom. And alighting at a house of good credit, was very well entertained by the owner of the house, that was one of the best knights in that country. So supper ended, discoursing alone with him of divers matters, he demanded who was King of that country, being then troubled with civil mutinies? The Host with tears in his eyes, thus answered, You shall know (Sir Knight) that after the King Pompeiano, our Sovereign, was slain, by the men of the Persian Soldan, a kinsman of his, called Don Gallaneo, became our King who governed us in peace, maintaining law & justice, with all uprightness: but since, we have understood he was slain at Persopolis, by some of the same Soldans subjects, and in whose absence there govern'd us a Licencor, a noble man named Damarino, who with great wisdom and discretion, kept us in quiet concord till a brother of the King of Phrygia, by name the fearful Tramolcano, knowing that in revenge of the death of Don Gallaneo of Antioch, the King of Cyprus, with 2 more brethren of his were slain in Persia, calling us traitors and rebels, with a great power came upon us, and seduced the country; Gariano, which is a great Lord in his country, took our Governour, saying he would have rebelled with the land, and hath imprisoned him in a castle, taking possession of the whole Kingdom, saying, Don Gallaneo hath no right: Alas, than he, and so executeth daily such tyrannies on the afflicted people, that we desire rather to dy than live. This Sir, is the truth of your demand. But tell me, said Don Brianel, left your King Pompeiano no issue to inherit his Kingdom after him? He did, replied his Host, one daughter called the Princess Aurora, whom we think to be dead, for we have never since heard of her. What if she be not dead, said Don Brianel, and coming hither, will you not receive her? We will all dy in her behalf, replied he: but these traitors are so strongly fortified that we should hardly effect any good, unless there were some to encourage the people of the country, and for this none better than the Governour Damarino, but that his

im.

imprisonment for this or for that. As his Guard so great (said Don Brianell) that you think he may not be liberated; The Guard (replied he) is not so great, but that the City is so nigh to the Castle, that upon giving of the watch-word 30000 men would arm themselves. And in the Castle there is a spine that reacheth to the King Tramolcanos Palace. Now know you this, said Don Brianell because you saw a man on whom I may repose greater trust, I will tell you (answered the Host) I was a squire of the Castle, under Damartino 3 years, and then knew I it, and that way I went often to speak with him, which makes me the more pity his imprisonment. Don Brianell liked well of his Hosts words, and perceiving he wished much to the affairs of the Princess Aurora, said, Can you tell me how I might go into that spine to get within the Castle? I do, replied he; but what doth it concern you, that you'll undertake so dangerous an enterprise? I am his knightly, replied Don Brianell, and would willingly hazard my self to gain his liberty. Although it seems impossible to scape with life in this enterprise, said the Host, because there is within a coffin of the Counts, with 100 knights, I will notwithstanding do it, and help herein with all I live; and will go with you to-morrow to Antioch, being an honor to lose my life in company of such a knight. Don Brianell thanked him, promising that if their enterprise had good success, his pains should be well quitted. The viceroy being with them their recompense, said the Host, and more than this I am bound to do for Damartino. The next morning saying that he must go about certain affairs to Antioch, and himself all in armour, for though he was poor yet was he one of the valiantest knights of that country, all his life trained up in chivalrous designs. Whither Don Brianell seeing he was not at it, knowing he was a knight, and so departed toward Antioch.

C H A P. XLVI

What Don Brianell Palineo of the venture did, arriving at Antioch, and the danger they were in.

With intention also said, travelled these two knights till they came within sight of the city of Antioch, which was one of the best and well peopled cities of the world; for there was within a 100000 great households. Don Brianell highly ad-
mir'd

mit's the turrets and towers of the same, which were number-
less, and the sun reverberating on them made the city seem as if
burning flame. What think you sir, of this noble city, demand-
ed the Host? Well, replied Don Brianell, for I have not seen a
more fairer, and that better contented me. Not without reason
do you say so, said the Host, for I assure you, there are but 3 fair-
er at this present, which are Babylon, Memphis, and Constanti-
nople, which notwithstanding seem in fairness equal this. I
pray you tell me your name, said Don Brianell, for I greatly de-
sire to know it, seeing we shall be better acquainted hereafter.
My name is (said he) Palineo of the Venture; and seeing this oc-
casion requires it, I would gladly know yours, before we come
to Antioch. I am called the adventurous Knight, replied Don
Brianell, and do believe you never heard me named, having ne-
ver travelled this way before. I have no doubt of it, replied Pa-
lineo, but you must make change that name here, for it is said, a
Knight so called was present at the King of Cyprus death.
Thus went they till they met a Knight sore wounded going in
great haste, Don Brianell staying him, demanded the cause of his
hasty journey in that manner: You shall know sir, replied the
Knight, that the Count Gariano to exercise his Knights, order'd
yesterday a tourney of 1000 on each side, so many of his against
the like number of the Kings King Tramolcanos, which on ei-
ther part was begun this day very bloody; but in the mean time
entering therein, 2 of the Kings cousins have made such a massa-
cre of the Counts Knights that none dare confront them, & my
self being wounded, as you see, am thus going to be cured in a
Castle not far from hence, and so pass away. What were best to
do, sir Palineo, demanded Don Brianell? That we go to the rescue,
answered he, and there we shall see what we have to do. And
thus resolved, as they at the next day, where but 500 of the
Counts Knights were left, and so wounded, that they could no
longer withstand the adventures, by reason of the cruel strokes
of the Kings cousins; which Don Brianell perceiving, and his va-
liant heart abhorring to be so idle, said to Palineo, let us succour
these almost vanquished. He is so, replied he. Whereupon couch-
ing their lances entered the lists, and at the first encounter, over-
threw 2 of the Kings Knights; and Don Brianell before his
| lance

lance brake unhorsed more than six; Palineo with a loud voice cried out thus, Courage, courage, knights of Antioch, and shew the valour of your mindes, lest now ye be reputed vanquished, which neuer hitherto hapned. Who embolden'd with this speech, seeing the haughty deeds of Don Brianell, courageously renewed the bloody skirmish. The 2 Giants seeing that nobelty in the Cities knights, and how the Prince Don Brianell like a bloody Dragon persecuted their men, did both together assault him; but he that in greater perils had been in, awaited them courageously, well cover'd with his shield, and they arriving both at one time with their stinging semiters discharged 2 mighty blows at him: but Don Brianell spurred up his horse within them, that the blows lighted not full on him; yet his shield was clef in sunder, & he wounded one with a mighty thrust, that the sword appeared at his back, falling dead to the ground. And seeing another furious blow from the other Giant descending on his head, being destitute of a shield cross the semiter with his sword, being of a better temper than the Giants, it cut it in two, and straight he struck the Giant on his arm, that it fell from his shoulder to the earth, who seeing himself maimed of his limbe, turn'd his horse, and roaring fled away. Some can expresse the grief and rage of Tramolcano, to see one slain, and the other wounded to death; thereupon calling out his men, to take that knight that had committed so great Treason; whereat many compassed Don Brianell, wherefore Palineo went to help him, amazed at his haughty deeds. The Count Garianos men bravely descended him, yet had he remained prisoner (for the devilish Tramolcano descended with all his men) had not Palineo that feared to the danger, pluckt him by the arm, and said to him, Follow me (Sir knight) If you will save your life; for it will be reputed to less valour to save it thus, than by dying to destroy all this company. Don Brianell allowing his counsel, rein'd his horse backward, and went away in despite of them all that looked after him. So soon as the King was come down from his window, the toynye was parted, and he commanded all those and other knights aboue 4000 to follow the murderers (as he called them) of his cousins, and dead or alive they should bring them to him: and taking with him the dead bodies of his

slain

slain cousins, returned to his Pallace to arm himself, intending in person to follow the search: all which was but in vain, for Palineo knowing all those ways, nooks and lanes that were there about, staid out of the city, in sight of all the knights, spurring without lingering till they came into a little grove, and turning on the right hand entred into a garden, unseen of any, and passed to the farther side thereof, unto a house where shepherds in stormy weather withdrew themselves, and there staid. Don Brianell said, seeing they were not seen of any, Let us light here if you please, that our Horses may rest, and from hence we may well see if any follow us. Where looking from a lofty mountain, and spying none, dismounted from their Horses, and put them in a stable that was there, giving them Hay and provender they found there. And with great joy of their good success dismounted of their late adventure, greatly pleased with the death of those two Giants, who Palineo said committed great outrages in that land. I hope (said Don Brianell) we shall easily enter the Castle. Hardly shall we do it, replied Palineo, yet we will try it, seeing we are come to that end. In the mean time if were good we had somewhat to supper. It were not amiss, replied Don Brianell, if our provision were better. Leave that to me, said Palineo, so soon as it is night, I desire to see what is done in the Pallace, the better to order our affairs. And so expired the approach of night for their ensuing actions.

C H A P. XLVII.

What Don Brianell and Palineo did going out of the City of Antioch, how they entred the Mine, and their Fight within the Castle, about the liberty of Damartino.

The dark night being come so obscure as they wished, Palineo untarm'd himself, and leading Don Brianell behind, put on a cloak he found in the house, which the day before a shepherd had left there, & masking his face went to the city, where taken for a shepherd he passed unknown, till he came to the Kings palace, where he found many armed knights, that turn'd from the search, among whom wast heking himself mad with anger, that he could not hear of the 2 knights that slew his cousins: among this troop had Palineo occasion to go in, and so went to the mines mouth, the way was shut, and feeling whether it might be open-

er, he found the Lock very weak, for the key was easily used to be that, because that secret might not be discovered. And so returned to the city, and brought some signals for himself and his companion, wherewith he came to Don Brianell at almost 10 a clock, and with a good stomach they suppt, having eaten nothing since they came from Miriana, and having done, Palineo said, Let us be gone, for if we stay longer, the King and the Count may have suppt, and so we be lockt out of the Pallace. But what shall we do with our Horses, said Don Brianell? for I would not lose mine, because this city cannot afford one so good. It (replied Palineo) we dy in this enterpryse we shall not need our Horses; but if we escape, liberating according to our desire, our friend Damartino, the matter will be less in losing them. Don Brianell replying never a word, armed himself, and carrying his Helm in his hand put on the Herp-heros cloak, which Palineo had before worn, who said unto him; You pass me in disguising your self, incurring no less danger than I do, for if with the many lights I be known by mine armour in the Pallace you are like to suffer with me. But what shall we do, said Don Brianell? Here we can do no other wise, replied he, but in the city we may better shift. And being come thither, by the way they met 2 or 3 Pages, Palineo stepped to one, & took him by the cloak, made shew of drawing his sword, the affrighted Page left it, & got away, crying out they would murder him: but Palineo calling Don Brianell, took another way, because he would not be seen: Don Brianell could not stand for laughing, to see what device Palineo had to get a cloak. What say you to this, said Palineo? he that hath nothing must shift to get it with little labour. It was well done, said Don Brianell, and the quickness you performed it with, makes me think you have not a few times used it. You say true, said Palineo, for sometimes by your necessity, I have helped my self with the like devices, which is nothing; for in need, this cloak was as well mine, as his that wore it, and perchance more so.

In this manner arrived they at last in the Pallace (after the clock had strake 12.) where the King was yet at supper, meeting with the Captain of the Kings guard thinking they belonged to the Court, demanded whence at that time they came. They

replied, we came from seeking those knights the King our Sovereign commanded to be brought unto him, and not finding them, we returned to alarm our selves. So they pass till they came to the pike, seeing none by, open'd the Lock and went in, chaining the way fast on the inside, and sailing with their hands went along; and by the way Palineo said, It behoves us to consider how we shall behave our selves, though you excell in valour all those that wear armour, yet it is not amiss to avoid all danger, therefore let us go softly, for it may be we shall see Darnartino without blow of sword or lance. I would we were wither, said Don Brianell, and as for the rest, it would not be much we should be through your good policy. At length they came to the way on the farther side, that went into the Castle, passing it, Palineo that it say, that none might descry them that way, and giving one another a watch-word, to know themselves in any danger befalling them, groping with their hands, they came to the place where Palineo knew the Wysson was, which they found sure locked; Don Brianell grieved, thinking they should not do as they would: but Palineo said, Courage, Sir Knight, we will finde means to open this way. And if not (replied Don Brianell) our swords shall break it open. Palineo answered, You say well, therefore let us softly go to the Castle-gate, that none hear us make it sure, that neither by one or other (if we prevail) any may hear the news: and going thither Palineo took a handful of earth and cast in the locks through the key-holes, that it was impossible without breaking to open them. I have learn'd more of you (said Don Brianell) in one day than ere my Tutor taught me in ten years. It might be (answered Palineo) they were never in such dangers as I, and could not teach you that which by experience is learned. By this time they were heard by one of the servants of the Castle; who perceiving they were not of the Court of guard, ran to the Stair, crying, the strangers were within, the amazed Stair leapt out of bed and arm'd himself, whilst the man cried, Arm, Arm, the Castle is surpris'd: whereupon above ten knights that were within were scared out of their beds: which the three knights seeing, Palineo said, Follow me knight, for as there unite themselves. Yet for all their noise there appeared many

burning torches, by the light they saw the fearful Giant coming with a mighty space in his hands. Another way came there 6 knights all ready armed. Don Brianell required Palineo to assault the knights, while he withstood the Giant, who if he had thought them to be but 2 alone, had not armed him, and raising his heavy space, would have discharg'd it on his adversary, but stepping aside made him lose his blow, and wanting his waist, heisted aloft his sword with both hands, and ground it with mighty force upon the Giants head, whereon he wore a brazen skull, which being cut made him a little wound. The Giant not regarding the blow, would have pull'd him to him, but Don Brianell seeing death before his eyes if the space took him full, straight cast himself upon him, and with much ado wounding it out of the Giants hands, but he took Don Brianell between his arms, thinking to smite him, yet he with a valiant heart drew his dagger, & stuck it to the hilts twice or thrice in the Giants breast, who feeling himself deadly wounded, let him go, drawing out Cortleax that hung by his side, and with it strok at Don Brianell, which he spying come right to his head, started aside, yet for all that it cut the Helm quite down on the one side, and descending lower, parted his armour, wounding him sorely on the side, yet not dangerously. Don Brianell with one blow strok at his leg which the Giant for haste having not armed, was clean cut off, making him fall to the ground like a Tower, roaring like a Lion, in short space he yielded up his soul to him that through his evil deeds did long expect it. Which done, Don Brianell went to help Palineo that was in a fierce combat with the knights of the Castle, which were all there; among whom he shewed the brave courage of his mind, and had slain already 4, and with the rest (though with danger) he behaved himself very bravely, which greatly contented Don Brianell that looked on, thinking it no time to be idle, valiantly assaulted the knights, killing 2 dead at 2 blows, and not long after the rest, not able to suffer his mortal blows, fled down towards the Castle gate, where the Porter trying to open it, to call for help, but all his labour was in vain, which the knights seeing, returned again to their adversaries, where quickly they fell breathless at their feet, with all the rest of the forces, leaving none of the Giants company alive in the Castle.

This

This dispatch, these 2 brave Warriours searched about the Castle to see if any were hid, but finding none, Don Brianell said, We have done ill, in not saving one, to do what we would, and serve us at our need. Gisebe not herent, replied Palineo, for we have no such business, nor need more service than I can do, being not so deeply wounded, that we should require any such help. For say well, answered Don Brianell, but unless I be deceased, you are soze wounded, and my self am in like case, and before we lose more blood, let us set Damarino at liberty. We it so, replied Palineo, and so took the keys of the prison from the Porters side, and opened it, where they found him overladen with bolts and irons, pale, meagre, and weak, for want of sustenance, talking no words sometimes in 2 or 3 days, whom the Knights seeing could not stay tears in their eyes, knowing him to be one of the loyalest Knights living in those days. Damarino seeing those Knights enter in that manner, said, What would you have with us Knights, is your Lord now contented to end my life, which would be no little comfort to my many torments. Palineo no longer able to conceal himself, unlacing his Helm with great joy to see him alive, said thus, You have no cause to fear us, most loyal Knight, being now at length set at liberty by the hands of this valiant Knight, to whom you are no less bound than for your life. And by yours, said Don Brianell, for without you, mine had little abailed. Whereupon taking away his irons, with great gladness he embraced Palineo, saying, I do assure my self, most dear friends, you would not fail me in my necessity, for in such times true friends are known more than in prosperity, and humbling himself to Don Brianell, craved to kiss his hands, seeing his person and that god had requited his duty. Don Brianell shewed him the like courtesy, and taking him up, saying, What for that little he had done he deserved no such thanks, being bound to do more than that for him for her sake that sent him. Our Knights, said Damarino, I have certain servants in prison somewhere about this Castle, for I know they were brought in with me, them I pray you let us see. So they went to seek them, and Damarino greatly wondered to see so great slaughter by 2 Knights. And after they had found the servants, Don Brianell & Palineo were laid in 2 beds

in the Castle, and were cured by one of Damartino's servants that was skillful in that science; and there they continued certain days till they were well, ordering that if any came from the King they should be admitted to them. But Don Brianell the first day required one of the servants secretly to fetch their Horses where they had left them, which so soon as it was dark was done, that not a little contented Don Brianell, for he much praised his Horse, being never a better in the whole Kingdom, and though he hurly barly in the city, none remembred them in him the castle. But after they were well, Don Brianell said to Damartino and Palineo together, Hitherto you have not known the occasion of my coming, nor what I am, having never seen me before, but to assure you of both, read this Letter, from the honourable Princess Aurora, by which you shall know the beginning and end of my Travel: Damartino taking it, and read it to this effect.

THe disinherited Queen of Antioch, Aurora, Princess of Miriana, to thee, the loyalest of all creatures, her loving Knight Damartino of the Valley, Governour of the Kingdom, by our will though by a strange hand, health. I know the unhappy chances, overthrows, and unfortunate misadventures have not been unknown to thee, (as the man that hath sustained the like) which have by the provision of the immortal gods befallen the King Pompeiano thy lord, and my dear father, as also the feared absence of my person, so necessary to escape the fury of Prince Perigee of Persia, and Don Gallaneo of Antioch. And now reposing my confidence on the high estate of thy descent, in the great loyalty I have known in thee, & by the love my father bare thee, (whose death partly on some of them is revenged, as this Knight more at large will tell thee, I hope the like shall be seen in my presence, through thy means) and order, either by my coming in person to thee, or with an host of men, sufficient to regain our rights; for which cause I send thee this valorous Knight, excellent not onely in Arms but in any thing else required in a noble man. With him shalt thou determine the best and speediest means for these affairs we move, but the gods protect thee, and preserve thee in that state of loyalty which thou ever gloriest in.

So soon as Damartino read this Letter, he embraced Don Brianell again, saying, I could not have or desire better news than these (Sir Knight) to comfort my afflicted heart, joying to know of the welfare of my Sovereign. But how shall we do, for this Tyrant and insupporting King Tramolcano, is so mighty and strongly fortified in this land, that we can hardly oppose his forces. I am of opinion, said Palineo, seeing we are to bring so great an enterprise, we acquaint the Duke of Silvania to whom, having Don Gallaneo granted all his liftings, the Emperor hath now for some causes discontented, and he I am assured seeing you at liberty, will not deny all his aid, assisting you to reobtain that which he hath lost, or else lose what he hath now. I do very well like what you have said, replied Damartino, and therefore you and I will to morrow go to him, leaving this Knight in the Castle, to answer any that comes from the City. It were better we all go together, said Palineo, and if any come we will leave order with these servants what they shall do. Be it so, said Don Brianell, and I think it best we go ere it be day, that we be not seen, putting on the armour of the Giants Knights. So resolved they went to rest themselves, and about midnight rose and changed their armour; Damartino and Palineo taking the best Horses in the Castle, departing, commanding their servants, if any came from the City they should tell them the Giant had commanded none should enter to speak with him, because he was not well, and that they should make them answer according to their demand, in the Giants behalf.

C H A P. LXVIII.

What befell Don Brianell and his companions with the Knights of the Lions, and how knowing one another, they all returned to the Castle.

The parts of the night were overpast, when the beaming light of pale shining Diana, would give place to the eastern rising of the morning sun, whose clear approach expecteth from the Heavens the obscure darkness of the gloomy night; when these 3 Knights issued forth of the Castle upon stately couriers with strong and knotty lances in their hands, and with a page onely to bear their shielos, directing their way to the city of Silvania, supposing to finde the Duke there. Now, saith the Histori-
they

they were not gone 6 miles from the city, but they saw coming towards them 2 knights, the bravest gallants they ever saw, they brought with them 6 pages all on fair horses. Was ye ever se gallanter knights in your life, said Don Brianell to Damarino? No truly, replied he. Assure your self, said Palineo, they be not of this country, for none here can sit a horse, nor manage him so bravely, yet by their armour they seem nobel knights. Why think you so, said Don Brianell? Because they have on them no such signs as you (replied he) whereby it seems they have not been in many combats, or not with that armour, and if you think good, it would not be amiss to try if their substance doth agree with their show. Do not, said the pensive Damarino, put not your self to such trial, for oftentimes combats are jestingly begun, but in earnest ended, especially because me thinks you knights will bravely defend themselves. With this talk they drew nigh to one another, whereby they saw them with rose-colour'd armour, very rich and curiously graven with many lions crowned with laurel. wreathes; one of them kept sozward, and meeting the 3 knights, in the Persian tongue saluted them, they did the like with much courtesie. Came ye (sir knights, said he of the lions) from Antioch? Yes, replied they, we yesterday came thence. But why ask you? Because (said he) I go in search of a knight whom I hope to finde there; may be you know him. What device wears he in his arms, or what is his name, demanded they? I know not how he may call himself this way, replied he of the lions, but he wears a tawny armour, with a sea-wave, and on his shield engraven the picture of a very fair lady; I know if he be in these parts, he cannot but be named according to the courage and valour of his minde. Don Brianell hearing this, thought they demanded so; Don Bellianis, and because he speaks in the Persian language, imagined he was gone from Bolleria where he left him, and this might be some friend that followed him; desirous to be better informed of this, said, With this knight you ask for is not in this country; but if you will tell me, what you would with him, I'll tell you where you may finde him; for though this knight is no less named than you say, none can give you better instruction of him than I. What I said would speak with him, there is nothing I more desire; therefore

you may greatly favour me to tell me the place of his abode without further question. He tell you, said Don Brianell, and let me know your name. I am call'd the Knight of the lions. I am never the wiser for that name, said Don Brianell, therefore unless you be more plain you shall not know of me what you would. You are a strange man (said the Knight of the lions) to deny my request, having told you my name, for in that you know me not, I am not bound to tell you who my grandfire was. It's a marvel you are unknown, said Palineo, having ended so many adventures with that armour, which so testifie, seeming wondrous battels, and it may be a wonder you were not without further question known, since the kingdom of Antioch is so full of your prowesses. Whereunto the Knight of the lions thus replied, By your words I perceive, because I would have said by you what you did by me, you have so mangled your armour, and not that with them you have been in any fight: if you have in you such deeds as words proudly to breathe unlearnedly, I gladly would break a lance with you upon condition, that if I vanquish you, this Knight be bound to tell what I demand; and if I be vanquished, my armour shall be yours, that you may employ them in such enterprizes you speak of. As it as you please, answer'd Palineo, if my companion will agree to the condition. I am content, said Don Brianell. Whereupon Palineo turn'd about to take his carter, so did the Knight of the lions, with great surp-meting in the midst of their course, & staying themselves in their saddles, the encounters were so strong, that the Knight of the lions lost his stirrups; but Palineo was by the fierce shock clean unhorsed over the crupper, and his adversary pass away most gallantly toward Don Brianell, to whom much wondered at the brave encounter, saying thus to him, Oeing (the Knight) in you remains to discharge the condition of our controverisie, I intreat you to satisfy my demand. Don Brianell being about to answer him, Palineo arrested, saying, Knight of the lions, let's end the battel, for though I tell I am not overcome. I am bound to no more, said he, having said I would but break one lance, and since you tell you have no reason to urge me any more, but that this Knight do keep his promise. Let him be sav'd or not overcome, said Don Brianell, and the rest shall quick-

ly he said. But the other Knight of the lions seeing this, went to them saying, There can no right judgment be given on this contebatle; for both you will say he is not vanquished, though he be: but I will try with you, said he to Don Brianell, which of them is vanquished, therefore pass no sentence hereon, for our battel shall arbitrate it, and what we else would. Don Brianell perceiving that the Knight threatened him, made no answer, but rein'd his horse about, catching his lance to meet his adversary, who was nothing slack to do the like; and like 2 furious lions encountering with mighty strength, making the earth tremble under them. Don Brianell encountred the Knight of the lions in such sort that penetrating the shield and armour, he made him bend his head back to his horse crupper: but the Knight of the lions smote him on the visor of his helmet, which being of a fine temper resist'd there the fury of the lance which for all that brake his lance making it fly from his head, constrain- ing him to save himself by holding about his horses neck, almost besides himself thinking he had lost his eyes. In this manner stood he a while till he had recover'd his senses, then seeing his adversary come toward him with his sword drawn, ashamed of his accident, and mad with rage, did the like, covering his head with his shield for want of a helmet: but ere he could do so he was suddenly known by the Knight of the lions, and he that justed with him thinking he had done him some great harm, sheath'd his sword, and in Greek said, Stay Prince of Macedonia, for you must not combat with me. Which Don Brianell seeing, did the like, saying, Who are you that knows me in a strange lane? He Knight not replying, unlaced his helm, and straight Don Brianell did so too, demanding for his dear brother Don Bellianis? He is very far from hence, replied Don Brianell. What is that valiant Knight that comes with you, it's my brother Don Clarineo of Spain, said he, and I am greatly joy to have met with you, for else we knew not what to do. By this Don Clarineo was thither come, and with great love embraced him, and said, (to the great wonder of Damarcino and Palineo, to see their good agreement) It had almost cost us dear, to know of you against your will what we required; I assure you, if you longer conceal your self I will no more seek you. We are in a strange

strange land, replies Don Brianell, therefore can I do no other-
 wise, though it should cost me more danger. But what shall we
 do, for thinking to finde you in necessity, the Emperour and his
 host sent us thither with 100000 men, which are not far from
 hence; for knowing you were come to relieve the Princess Au-
 rora to her Kingdom, we departed to aid you. Where left you
 my Lord the Emperour demanded Don Brianell? He is not with
 us, I assure you, answer'd Lucidamore, for he and Sabian of
 Trebento were separated from us by a certain adventur. All
 this talked they that Damartino and Palineo did not understand
 though they thought they knew one another. Wherefore Don
 Brianell said to the Princess, It behoveth you to say, that the
 Soldan of Babylon hath sent his Army to place the Princess
 Aurora in her Kingdom, that these knights may more willingly
 further us, for in these affairs they are very forward. Is my bro-
 ther here, demanded Don Clarineo, and my cousin the Prince Ar-
 cleo? I left them in Persia, replied Don Brianell, in a bloody con-
 troverkie against the Soldan, about the death of Don Gallaneo
 of Antioch. Is't possible, said Don Claineo? I assure you, you
 have greatly gladdened me with the death of that Traitor; but tell
 me did my brother Don Bellianis kill him? He did, replied Don
 Brianell, hereafter I will inform you of the manner here. Now
 advertise your pages to say, ye all come away from Babylon.
 So they shall, said Don Clarineo. Whereupon Don Brianell
 called to him Palineo (that was much abashed at his call) and
 said to him and Damartino, You are (Sir Knights) to give the
 immortal gods great thanks for directing our affairs better than
 we wished, for these knights are my near kinsmen, for whom I
 would undertake any danger in the world. I speak this, Sir Pa-
 lineo, because you should not bet your self at your chance, nor di-
 minish your good will toward me for what is past: Besides all this
 they are come about the same matter we have in hand, landing
 a strong army, sent to this end, from the Soldan of Babylon,
 which will help us, being here hard by: wherefore consider what
 best we may do, for in this nor any thing else none of us will in
 no manner contrarie your counsel. Whereunto Palineo some-
 what comforted made this answer, I could not have received
 greater comfort for my overthrow than this, being done by such a

Knight and your high Ally, for which cause he desired to gain the honor of all adventures in the world; therefore I remain no less bound to his service, though I believe he little needs it, than heretofore I was to yours. I do greatly thank you, Sir Knight, said Don Clarineo, thinking my self happy to meet you, and rejoice we came not to handy blows, being sure to have been vanquished by you, as your courteous words sufficiently shew: therefore I surrender all the honor of the victory to you, as your duty, resting yours for ever, as my future deeds shall approve. So embracing one another, expelled all envious rancor from their valiant hearts. This done, Damartino said, he thought good they all return to the castle, where they might conclude what should be performed; in the mean time one of the pages should go and charge the army to stay where they had left it till they received farther order. This counsel being allowed, they sent 2 of their pages with command, and themselves return'd to the castle, where resting that day, they resolv'd that Prince Don Lucidamore and Damartino should that night go to the army, and before morning light should stand close to the walls of Antioch, whoso they knew to be ready in arms with above 100000 fighting men, because by their spies they were advertised of their power, and the usurping King accounting them enemies, determined to meet them in the field, yet commanding the city gates to be kept shut, lest unawares it should be surpris'd, leaving within 40000 men to defend it: and he left the Count Garianno prepared to set forth. Whereupon it was resolv'd, that Don Clarineo and Don Brianell with his friend Falineo should pass through the mine to the city, and procure to open one of her gates for their entrance, which was strongly fortified, that they feared nothing for 2 years. So Damartino and his companions went to the army, greatly rejoicing to see the good order thereof. Don Lucidamore notwithstanding his pages had deliver'd his message to himself give command they should say they were sent by the great Sultan of Babylon.

CHAP. XLIX.

The great danger the Princes *Don Clarineo* and *Don Brianell* sustained in the City of *Antioch*, how they were succoured by the Knight of the *Basilisks*. The winning of the City, and the death of the Tyrant *Tramolcano*. The

The appointed hour come, which made every one think it a
 year, so much they desir'd to be within Antioch, and having
 seen the signal of the approach of the Emperors army the half-
 ant knights Don Clarineo, Don Brianell, and the polittick Pal-
 ineo, opening the door of the spine, went through to the Palace,
 but they were scarce at the Palace side when they heard a great
 noise, and hearkning, they understood it was because the army of
 strangers had so suddenly appear'd before the walls, whither
 the King Tranolcano with Count Gariano were going with
 an infinite company to see if they would assault the city before
 moyn, whereto lacked not 2 hours. All which indeed was so;
 for Don Lucidamore and Damartino having commanded their
 men to hang scarfs upon their armour to be known from their
 enemies did at that time conduct their men harn by the gate,
 which should be opened for their entrees. He quiet, said Pal-
 ineo, and let me go forth to see what we were ball to do. And
 what you will, said Don Brianell, here we'll stay for you. And
 presently opening the door softly he went forth. How like you
 this knight, said Don Brianell? What should I say of him, (an-
 swer'd Clarineo) but that I never saw a more braver knight,
 I mean of more policy in all my life before. Thereupon Don
 Brianell recounted to him all he had done in his company, which
 greatly contented Don Clarineo, at which time he return'd, say-
 ing, Sir knight, the Giant is gone with all his company, let us
 now follow him, being as the time shall minister occasion. They
 did so, thronging themselves among those that were going to the
 walls, where arriving they saw the gate shut, but which they had
 determin'd to open, and the Giant had placed a garrison there,
 & was going to speak with Count Gariano. I believe, said Pal-
 ineo, we shall have more ado to open the gate than we thought.
 I have (replied Don Clarineo) consider'd how to do it; my cousin
 Brianell shall keep the passage from the spine, letting no more
 pass thither; and you (Sir Palineo) shall by force take the keys
 from the Porter, and with them procure to open the gate, and I
 will defend you from these that are already here: this must be
 with speed, that the valor of your courageous hearts, & the charge
 we have enterprised both kinde us to. Whereupon Don Brianell
 settled himself in the passage, which being narrow he could scarce
 defend

defend himself. Palineo with great courage, by light of many
 Torches, kept to the Porter, and cleft his Head at one blow,
 and tak the keys from him, but ere he did it many knights as-
 saulted him to give him his death. The valiant Prince Clari-
 neo, knowing what he had to do, kept before, giving so mighty
 and mortal strokes to every one that approached, that they fled
 from him as from the presence of death. By this time Palineo
 by his speedy diligence had open'd the gate, had not the fearful
 Tramoilcano (hearing the sudden accident there) with an in-
 finite number of knights return'd with his heavy armour, ramming
 with such fury, that if Clarineo had not kept behind his dead
 horses and knights that lay there he had been slain at that first
 encounter of the horse, but he wounded the Giants horse in the
 head, thrusting his sword quite through, that the furious beast
 casting himself in such manner overthrew his master; the trea-
 cherous Count Gariapo would have done the same to Palineo,
 but slipping aside, he tumbled him from his horse at one blow.
 Certainly, they could not have given a better blow than these
 that more might help them: so when the Giants knights that
 were about 100, saw their master down, alighted also, because
 the narrowness of the place might not be a cause to hurt them
 with their horses. The fearful Giant being very heavy, with
 great pain raised himself, foaming at mouth, blaspheming all
 his gods, went against Clarineo, who being join'd with Don
 Brianell were both in fierce skirmish giving receiving mighty
 strokes, whose echo resounded in the camp without the city:
 & the Giant seeing him there, rush'd in, to hold him while his men
 did kill him; but having no advantage of strength over him, Cla-
 rineo to escape his hands, bravely pluckt him to him, that both
 fell down, where he was pitifully wounded, & had not his strong
 armour defended him he had lost his life: and getting from the
 Giant, he began a cruel fight, with great danger; whom Palineo
 seeing so sore wounded, wondered how he breath'd. Don Brianell
 was in no less peril, so many laid hold on him, with haste to
 pass by, that he died as fast as any of them. In danger were
 they all 3. looking so; nothing but death, though the King and
 Trasto; Gariapo were wounded no less than they: so Clari-
 neo meaning to leave his life revenged, so laid on them that
 all

all were imbued in their own blood: and whoever had seen them would rather have judg'd them to many raging Tygres, or hungry Lions, than Knights, hoping of no success of them without: for though they tried to enter, could not approach the gates, defended by the Giants garison, till this time passed, at such time as the giver of light illuminated the dark night, there came down a valley not far from the city a mighty pillar of fire, and after it follow'd a Knight with 2 of the ugliest Giants that ever were seen, who with such furious speed (as thunder-bolts break through the air) approach'd to the wall, setting a ladder against it. The Knight that came with them, whose armour was garnish'd with Basilisks, alighted from his horse, and without let of any below he mounted thereon to the top of the wall, beholding such deadly strokes, that ere they were aware of him he tumbled above 50 other dead. Don Lucidamore saw such gallant exploits in one Knight, leaving his armour to Damartino's charge, quickly climb'd the ladder, he was scarce on the top, when the Giants taking it, return'd that way, and in the manner they did come, leaving the beholders amazed with wonder. The Knight of the Basilisks instructed what he should do, defended certain steps of stone that were in the wall, beating down on each side many knights before him, clearing the way for Don Lucidamore that follow'd, making no less slaughter than he on that rebellious people: at length he arriv'd at the gate where Don Brianell was, weary and tired, who seeing the Knight of the Basilisks, thinking him to be one of his enemies, strook him him a mighty blow, but he knowing him, defended it with his shield, and rush'd in where he was; there he espied Clarineo, that had before him above 30 knights slain, & then with one stroke laid the Count Gariano dead on the earth, but was in extreme danger, because he lent to the trusty Palineo, who by losing much blood was in a trance, that he was fain to bear him close to the wall where he kept him before himself, making suspitious deeds. And there arriving the Knight of the Basilisks, in the Grecian tongue he said, Courage, brave Knight, for you are already succour'd. At the end of these words, with one huge stroke he cut off the Giants leg that he fell down, and breath'd his last, beating away all the knights about him, and quickly fled

freed that gate, keeping both to the portal thereof, where Lucidamore & Don Brianell were. And the Troops without, seeing they could not enter in otherwise all that day, making a great breach in the wall wherein 10 knights might easily pass together, pressing in with such fury that they were extremely oppressed. Defend you this entry, said Clarineo, to the knight of the Basilisks, while I open yonder gate; and he did so bravely, that in despite of them that first arrived, he overthrowed above 500 dead and wounded, making the rest give place to his puissant strokes. Clarineo went to Palineo to the keys, but he would not part with them, but opened the gate when they saw it, with great clamors they approached to enter the city. The knight of the Basilisks & his companions seeing it with joy, to themselves to give that fury place, with their arrival the battel was renewed in such manner that the place was heaped with dead men, because King Tramoisano's multitudes were infinite & expert, knowing that if they lost the city they should all pay the tribute of death to their enemies sword, fought like mad men. The Princes having recovered their knights together with the Princes of the Basilisks, and Clarineo having assured Palineo, whom he found with life, uniting themselves pressed in the thickest of the battel with such courage as they augmented in themselves, with desires to see their affairs terminate in a good end. The streams of blood began to run about so fast like rivers descending from so many mountains. Damartino considering that the city would hardly be won by that means, by reason of many people within to defend it, commanded all his men to name aloud the Princess Aurora, so they did, saying, Antioch, Antioch, for Princess Aurora. At this cry and name the people of the country hearing, & thinking their Lady & Princess was there, whom they so greatly desired, abandon'd those belonging as well to the Treason Count as the Giant, & withdrew themselves, which they had not done in the beginning, because they deem'd them enemies to the city & land, themselves crying with, in as others did without, trampling under their hooves & making without pity those Treasons in such sort, so revenge themselves for the outrages done by them, that ere now they left not one alive to bear news of their desolation, having slain that morning

morning above 80000, wanting above 6000 Christians. And this hapned by Damartino's policy, which if it had not been, though their adheraries had also died in the end all died by the sword, their losses had been infinite. This done, Don Lucidamore caused to be proclaimed, that on pain of death none should stir any thing in the city, but quietly ledge therein without oppressing or molesting any way the meanest citizen of the same. And having taken all the fortresses, castles & holds of the city to their power, calling Don Clarineo & Don Brianell with him, went together to the knight of the Basilisks, who being mounted would depart. But Don Clarineo remembering the danger he had freed him from, with great love embraced him saying, O most glorious and renowned knight, the excellentest that ever drew a sword, I hope you will not so greatly wrong us, so to depart unknown, having liberated all of us from so great danger: for which not onely our lives, but the whole glory of this lasting victory of this battel is too little recompense for such aid; thinking our selves sufficiently honour'd, by solely knowing what you are. This he spake in the Grecian language, for when he succour'd him first he encouraged him in the same tongue. I know not excellent Prince (answer'd the knight of the Basilisks) how I may cancel the bonds you tie me in, by the incomparable merits of your words, yet notwithstanding unless my Will, Don Lucidamore more amazed than at first, to know his brother, did presently unlace it, whereby the excellency of his complexion is seen. Whom Don Clarineo knowing, rest'd so confused with content, that the tears ran down his cheeks, and with a loud voice said, O mighty Lord, that for us all did suffer, what great wonder do I see; having before mine eyes my dear Lord & brother the Prince Don Bellianis? Whereupon he strait leapt from his Horse to kiss his hand. The like did all the rest. Don Bellianis seeing them do so, dismounted from his Horse to embrace all those knights, with such content as may be imagined. Here wants nothing not (said Don Lucidamore) to end our demand, but the presence of our Lord the Emperour. What shall not need, replied Don Bellianis, for I have left him well within the city of Bollera, and hard by Persepolis, whereto we must go with all speed. How arriv'd he there (demanded Don

Clarineo) he thus left himself far from them. That I know not (saith Don Bellianis) but I left him, where I tell you, & there I believe we shall finde him. Where they were separated by the multitudes of Knights that came to do their duties to Don Bellianis, not able to express their joy with his sight. And he commanded them all to keep his & all their names secret, what they were he would have none of the city know. Having done with their greetings they went to King Tramoilcano's Palace and lodg's there, their men being quarter'd in the city, they tak the dead bodies away, offering no wrong or injury to any citizen. They carried the noble Palineo to the Palace, who had recovered his senses, all the Knights visiting & much honouring him: at whose presence he greatly rejoiced, as also to see those necessities ended. Don Clarineo & Don Brianell were laid in 2 rich beds hard by Palineo's, where their many wounds were dress'd by skilful chyrurgeons. Don Bellianis taking in his company Damartino, whom he greatly esteem'd for Princess Aurora's report of him, and went about the city, and assembling together all the States thereof, and chiefest citizens of the same; Don Bellianis made them a short discourse, thanking them for their loyalty, they always observ'd; promising they should all have their losses requited with full & ample satisfaction, and shew'd them the Letter writt'n to Damartino. They greatly consolated by his speech, promised to procure restitution of the whole Kingdom, upon which conclusion Don Bellianis return'd to the Palace, leaving Damartino giving order to recover the rest of the Province, without spilling of more blood. To which first he sent messengers to all cities and places of importance in that Kingdom.

C H A P. L.

How the whole Kingdom of *Antioch* being recovered, the Estate of Count *Gariano* was given to the politick *Palineo* of the Venture, and leaving *Damartino* Governour there, all those Princes departed toward *Persia*.

SOON as it was known through all the Kingdom of *Antioch*, the total ruine & utter destruction of the usurping King and all his forces, they all arose against the Tyrants' garrisons, knowing those Knights came from their lawfull right Prince.

cells, so that utterly subverting those adverse strengths, leaving none with life, they sent Ambassadors to Antioch, to acquaint them of these events so happily brought to a period, which much rejoiced them, sending thither governors to order those uppers, till all things else were happily concluded. By this time the wounded fights were through well except Palineo, who being those wounds was longer in healing. But one day being all together in council, it was determined that Damartino (as before) should sway the government of the whole Kingdom, and did swear all the people to obey him. And though he refused it, alleging he was far in years, & therefore it better became him to withdraw into a private life, leaving the variable chances of the giddy world; yet in the end he was forced to it at the intreaties of all the nobility of the land that highly esteem'd him. And Don Bellianis having understood of his cousin Don Brianell the great toil & dangers that the politick Palineo had in those businesses sustain'd, call'd him before all the greatest Peers, saying thus, If the merits that your valor and worthy person deserves should accordingly be recompensed, valiant and politick warrior, all this Kingdom were insufficient to counterpoise your high deserts, being recover'd by your onely means, for it is manifest that you were the cause of the restitution thereof, as also of Damartino's liberty; the glory of all which things deservedly should be attributed to your self. Which notwithstanding, I intreat you (not regarding the smallness of the gift, but the good will of the giver, as a token of your farther merit) to accept as your own the whole estate and lands belonging to the Count Gariano, wishing it were in a better time that I might express my love toward you with larger effects, according to the usance of my mind: yet will I procure the Princess Aurora to confirm you this, with promise of a greater recompense. All those honors that were there present highly allowed & commended what Don Bellianis had done, especially the Princes Don Brianell & Clarineo. To whom Palineo thus made answer, Excellent Prince and most heroic, for so may I with reason (though I know you not) call you, having on me extended the beneficence of your royal minde, by the bounty of your liberal
 Is a person than I speak of can be seen having

ving done nothing that might deserve so much as the company of such famous Knights; but the greatness of your largeness passing all compare bindeth me to this: and so do I receive these labours to imploy the same together with my life in your service, and the Princess Aurora my sovereign Lady, beseeching the immortal gods, that when I do forget this duty that then I may be made an example of the like ingratitude to all the universal orb.

And thereupon prostrating himself upon his knees, desired to kiss his hand: but Don Bellianis refusing it embraced him with great affection; the like did all the other Knights, calling him thereafter Count Gariano, having deserved it by the virtue and valour of his mind, possessing nothing of his Ancestours, but an Horse and Armour, and Weapons.

Don Bellianis having finished this action, commanded all his Army speedily to ship themselves, charging all their Leaders and Captains to bend their Voyage to Persia, and attend his coming, or order from him at Persepolis, making as it he had left the Emperour in danger there. They with a good winde departed, leaving Don Bellianis alone, with his onely brothers and Don Brianell that appointed to meet them by land. After all this they continued eight days in Antioch, which being pacified and quieted they resolved the ensuing day to depart.

The Count Gariano and the Governour Damartino greatly sorrowing for their absence; but before they went, they so much intreated them to discover themselves, that Don Bellianis not able to deny it, told them what they were, taking their words they should not disclose it to any; who rested amazed, yet very glad that these affairs were concluded by so great a Prince, and giving them Guides to direct their way to Persia, they at length departed. In which journey leaving them, the Episkop here endeth the first Part, landing her tempest beaten Bark in the doubtfull surges of accepting hope, on the quiet shore of your most gentle and patronaging favours.

FINIS.

